GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

WRITING LATIN

BOOK TWO

BARSS

D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY

Class PA 2187
Book B 284
Copyright No.

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

WRITING LATIN

BOOK TWO

BY

JOHN EDMUND BARSS

LATIN MASTER IN THE HOTCHKISS SCHOOL

REVISED EDITION

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

PA 2087
.B284

Copyright, 1903, by
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING CO.

Copyright, 1913, by
D. C. HEATH & CO.

1 H 3

©Cl.A351692
201

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

This revision of Writing Latin — Book Two contains the following changes from the first edition:

1. The Exercises are entirely new, and based on Professor Lodge's *Vocabulary of High School Latin.*

2. The Review of Case Constructions, covering eight Lessons, has been placed at the beginning instead of at the end.

3. An attempt has been made to have the vocabulary used in the Exercises on each construction include as many as possible of the words normally employed in that construction, an idea suggested by Professor E. P. Morris' work *On Principles and Method in Latin Syntax.*

4. In order not to interrupt the sustained attack on syntax, and to allow more time at the end of the course for reviews and final assimilation of principles, the Exercises in Connected Prose have, with the exception of brief paragraphs at the end of Lessons IX–XXVIII, been placed at the end of the book.

5. As in the case of Book One, the Special Vocabularies are now arranged by parts of speech, to allow of greater facility in reviewing.

6. Because of the tendency of beginners in Latin to associate one English word with one Latin word, the translation of the original Latin of the Exercises has been very free, the literal rendering being suggested in parentheses wherever this seemed necessary. It is hoped that by this means teachers will be aided in giving their classes an idea of what advanced prose composition really implies — an exact rendering of the thought of the original as distinguished from the translation of separate words.

7. The original plan of collecting the Exercises into a few groups of related subjects has been abandoned, so far as any typographical devices are concerned. Experience seemed to show that it was of no particular help to the pupil. At the same time, the principle of treating in the same lesson things which ought to be studied at the same time has been retained, as of fundamental importance.

8. The "Hints" have been revised, where necessary. In spite of certain requests, it seemed best to the writer not to add a complete section on Syntax, but to adhere to his first plan of requiring the pupil to use a grammar, to which the "Hints" should be supplementary. Teachers who desire such material in a composition book, as well as those who for reasons of their own prefer the less systematic method of a composition "based," without vocabulary, on the authors read, will find excellent books containing these features already in the field — a field which it is not the purpose of this manual to invade. Besides the grammars cited in the first edition, references have been added to the grammars of Hale and Buck, and of Burton.

J. E. B.

LAKEVILLE, CONNECTICUT,
May 19, 1913.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	vii
LESSONS I–VIII. REVIEW OF CASE CONSTRUCTIONS	1–21
LESSON IX. MOODS IN DIRECT QUESTIONS. COMMANDS. EXHORTATIONS. PROHIBITIONS	22
LESSON X. INDIRECT STATEMENTS	24
LESSON XI. INDIRECT QUESTIONS AND COMMANDS	29
LESSON XII. PERSONAL AND IMPERSONAL PASSIVE. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION	32
LESSON XIII. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND AS OBJECT. *LICET*. *OPORTET*. *NECESSE EST*	35
LESSON XIV. PURPOSE AND RESULT. ATTRACTION. SUPINES	39
LESSON XV. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH *UT* AND *NE*	44
LESSON XVI. *QUIN* AND *QUO MINUS*. CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC	46
LESSON XVII. EXPRESSIONS OF CAUSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH *QUOD*	51
LESSON XVIII. CONCESSIVE (ADVERSATIVE) CLAUSES	53
LESSON XIX. TEMPORAL CLAUSES	56
LESSON XX. TEMPORAL CLAUSES, CONTINUED	59
LESSON XXI. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	62
LESSON XXII. OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. CLAUSES OF PROVISO. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON	66
LESSON XXIII. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE	68
LESSON XXIV. PARTICIPLES. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	70

PAGE

LESSON XXV. USE OF *TALIS*, ETC. 74

LESSON XXVI. PRONOUNS 76

LESSON XXVII. CORRELATIVES 77

LESSON XXVIII. DATES 79

LESSONS XXIX–XLVI. EXERCISES IN CONNECTED NARRATIVE 82–99

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES 101

GENERAL VOCABULARY 133

INTRODUCTION

In writing Latin, the first object should be to secure grammatical exactness. It is always worth while to verify everything about which there may be the slightest doubt; and it is needless to say that nothing diminishes the difficulties of the work so rapidly as the practice of this careful scrutiny.

The next matter of importance is the order of words.[1] The student should strive to obtain clearness by reading his own Latin over, and seeing if he can understand it. Verbs should regularly stand last in their several clauses; it is then easy to give variety by occasionally varying this order.

In compound and complex sentences, the best results will be obtained by avoiding an involved sentence-structure until one has acquired some degree of skill in writing Latin. Thus, if we had to translate the sentence

The townsmen sent envoys to Caesar to beg him for peace, it would be safer to write

[Oppidānī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt] [quī pācem ab eō peterent],

in which the two clauses are perfectly distinct, rather than

Oppidānī lēgātōs ad Caesarem [quī pācem ab eō peterent] mīsērunt,

where the purpose clause is contained, as a sort of parenthesis, in the main clause. Furthermore, in the last sentence there are two verbs standing together at the end, which is a serious defect. This may be avoided by arranging the clauses as in the

[1] Read carefully G. 671–679; A. 595–599; B. 348–353; H. 663–685; HB. 621–630; Bn. 1055–1069.

first example, or by placing some other word than the verb at the end of the first clause. Thus, the last example might be made to end

. . . **quī pācem peterent ab eō mīsērunt.**

Latin frequently employs the relative where English prefers a demonstrative, even when there is a subordinating conjunction. The relative must always precede the conjunction. Thus,

Lentulus was brought in, [*and*] ***when he*** *saw the Gauls, he was alarmed*

should be written

Intrōductus est Lentulus, ***quī cum*** **Gallōs vīdēre, perterritus est.**

After one has acquired the ability to write clearly and in a normal Latin order, he may give attention to emphasis and style, combining with study of the grammatical rules the reading aloud of Latin with which he is familiar, and the retranslation into Latin of English renderings which have been written out and laid aside for a little time.

NEW WRITING LATIN

BOOK TWO

LESSON I

REVIEW OF CASE CONSTRUCTIONS

The references are to the grammars of Gildersleeve and Lodge (G.), Allen and Greenough (A.), Bennett (B.), Harkness (H.), Hale and Buck (HB.), and Burton (Bn).

1. **Case of Address**: G. 23. 5; 201. Remark 1. A. 340. B. 171. H. 402. HB. 400. Bn. 398; 1060.

2. **Concord of the Verb**: G. 211. A. 316. B. 254. 1–4. H. 388. HB. 328; 329. Bn. 735–742.

3. **Ablative of Agent**: G. 401 (second paragraph). A. 405 and Notes 2, 3. B. 216. H. 468. HB. 406. 1. Bn. 536.

4. **Ablative of Means**: G. 401. A. 409. B. 218. H. 476. HB. 423. Bn. 570.

5. **Indirect Object**: G. 344; 345. A. 362 and a. B. 186; 187. I. H. 423; 424 and 2. HB. 365. Bn. 449; 450.

6. **Attributive Agreement. Apposition**: G. 289–291; 320; 321. A. 281; 282; 285. 1, 2; 286 and a; 287. 1. B. 169. 1–5; 233. 2; 234; 235. *A*, 1, *B*, 1. H. 393–395. 1, 2. HB. 316; 317. 1, 2, a; 318; 319. 1; 320. I, II; 321. I; 323. 1, 2. Bn. 380; 381; 383; 384; 386; 629; 631; 632.

7. **Predicate Adjective and Predicate Noun**: G. 205; 206; 211; 286; 340. A. 283; 284; 285. 2; 287. 2–4; 391–393. a. B. 167; 168. 1, 2; 177. 1, 2; 235. *A*, 2, *B*, 2. H. 393. 8; 394; 395. 1, 2; 410. 1. HB. 317. 3; 319. II; 320. III; 321. II. Bn. 389; 392; (632).

8. **Syntax of the Relative**: G. 614 and Remarks. A. 305 and a; 306. B. 250. 1–3. H. 396 and 2, 3. HB. 322. Bn. 693; 694; 703; 705–707.

9. **Questions with *-ne*, *Nōnne*, and *Num***: G. 454–456. A. 332. b. B. 162. 2, a)–c). H. 378 and 2. HB. 231. 1, b), c), d). Bn. 363–367.

HINTS

Agreement. The rules of agreement depend on the following simple principles:

a. An adjective or noun used in attributive or predicate agreement has the same *case* as the word (or words) which it describes.

b. The *gender* and *number* of such adjective or noun will also be the same as those of the word (or words) which it describes, so far as circumstances allow. Note carefully the special rules given by the grammars for one adjective modifying two or more words differing in gender or number.

Indirect Object. Remember that while in English the indirect object may be made the subject of the passive, this must never be done in writing Latin. Only the direct object of the active can become the subject of the passive, the indirect object remaining in the dative; so that such a sentence as

The soldiers were given money

will, in Latin, always take the form,

Money was given to the soldiers, **Pecūnia *mīlitibus* data est.**

EXERCISE I

1. The citizens have given authority to Cicero, the praetor. 2. Offices have also been bestowed upon him. 3. By [his][1] excellent (best)[1] measures the consul saved the commonwealth. 4. Afterwards the senate called him father of [his] country. 5. He was called the father of his country by those whom he had rendered safe by his measures. 6. Were not the cities and towns of Italy, [that] most beautiful land, very numerous (many)?

[1] Words in parentheses ( ) are explanatory; those in square brackets [ ] are to be omitted.

7. Men and women were not equally praised by Pompey, the general, were they? 8. Neither approbation nor offices were bestowed upon the man (is) on whom once entire responsibility had been laid (to whom all things (neut.) had been once assigned). 9. Whom will the general associate with him (join to himself [as] companion)? 10. Did the citizens surrender themselves and all their [property] to him? 11. The weapons will be given up to the man (see 8) by whom this injunction was laid on (this was enjoined to) the citizens. 12. Caesar will be elected consul by those who formerly elected Cicero consul. 13. The general will return [their] weapons to those who surrender (shall have surrendered) themselves and all their [possessions] to him. 14. You owe me much (great) money, [my] friend; why have you not paid [it] to me? 15. Those who are called enemies by the general will pay (give) the heaviest (greatest) penalty (pl.). 16. There are many men, and women too, who are not handsome. 17. Very great was the renown of the general, Pompey, who was called The Great by the Roman senate. 18. These, father, are citizens of Capua, a town of Italy which is (which is a town, etc.,) both very important (large) and very beautiful. 19. Was not this town once called Capua? 20. We will not hand Capua over to those who have not bestowed on Pompey the honors which they owed him.

LESSON II

REVIEW OF CASE CONSTRUCTIONS — *Continued*

1. **Ablative of Accompaniment**: G. 392 and Remark 1. A. 413. a, b. B. 222 and 1. H. 473. 1; 474. 2, Note 1. HB. 418; 419. 1–4; 420. Bn. 550; 551.

2. **Ablative of Manner**: G. 399. A. 412. a, b. B. 220 and 1. H. 473. 3 and Note. HB. 445. 1–3. Bn. 554.

3. **Position of *Cum:*** G. 413. Remark 1. A. 143. f; 150. d. B. 142. 4. H. 175. 7; 182. 2. HB. 418. a. Bn. 102. 4.

4. **Ablative of Accordance**: G. 397. A. 418. a. B. 220. 3. H. 475. 3. HB. 414. Bn. 534.

5. **Two Accusatives**: G. 339. A. 396. a, b. B. 178, complete. H. 411. 1, 2, 4. HB. 386; 393, complete. Bn. 507–509.

HINTS

Prepositions in English. Remember that the inner meaning of the English rather than its outward form must be the guide in writing Latin. This is particularly true in translating prepositional phrases. For instance, in *under the table*, "under" denotes actual position beneath, and is translated by **sub**; but *under these circumstances* would be **hīs *in* rēbus** (literally, "in the midst of these things"); and *under Roman rule*, simply **imperiō Rōmānō**.

How to say "Own." When *own* is used to emphasize the idea of possession, the genitive of **ipse**, *self*, may be used, with or without a possessive pronoun. Unless the emphasis is very strong, however, the possessive pronoun alone will be sufficient. Thus,

for your own sake { **vestrā causā** or **vestrā ipsōrum causā.**
tuā causā or **tuā ipsīus causā.**

Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives. Remember that for *my*, *your*, *our*, the genitives of **ego**, **tū**, etc., are not to be used, but only the possessives **meus**, **tuus**, etc., in agreement with the object possessed; thus,

my horse, **equus meus**;
our horse, **equus noster.**

For *his*, *her*, *its*, *their*, use the possessive **suus** when the possessor is the subject of the sentence. Elsewhere use

the genitive of a demonstrative pronoun. The special rule for subordinate clauses will be treated later.

EXERCISE II

1. Friends, I will not set out with you of my own accord. 2. We are writing the letter with great care. 3. He taught me this of his own accord. 4. They will be taught the liberal arts and sciences (best arts) by him. 5. Here we shall be in no sense (way) safe, where the enemy will soon pitch [their] camp. 6. We shall either live with you gladly on those terms (sing.) which he has mentioned (said), or without you die with calmness (tranquil mind). 7. Under our dominion, the Gauls will no longer struggle with the Germans. 8. We have rightly established peace and friendship with those states against (**cum**) which we were formerly waging war. 9. The commander had led his army across the bridge and with all his forces was laying-siege-to a town which had not been rendered safe by new fortifications. 10. At the greatest risk to himself (his own greatest risk) the consul will save the commonwealth, which he has always defended most zealously (the highest zeal). 11. It was a pleasure to hear (with pleasure we heard) the letters which you had written; we will gladly do what (those [things] which) you asked us. 12. The consul asks the senate [its] opinion in this way. 13. Those who have been asked their opinion by the consul will lay this injunction on him (see I, 11). 14. According to my view, a full meeting of the senate will be summoned, and this told to them (to whom these things will be told). 15. In a full meeting of the senate[1] the consul will be

[1] Latin regards this as circumstance rather than place, hence the simple abl. is sufficient.

given[1] commendation by all who have (shall have) been asked their opinion. 16. Those who have been given commendation by the consul will bestow offices on the praetor, according to their custom. 17. As his practice was (according to his custom), he praised all whom he had associated with him (see I, 9) in this way. 18. The commander started with two hundred horsemen, who, as their custom was (see 17), did with the utmost eagerness all the things which he had enjoined upon them. 19. How was peace established on these terms? 20. No longer will it be without risk for us to wage war (shall we wage war without risk) against those with whom we formerly contended.

LESSON III

REVIEW OF CASE CONSTRUCTIONS — *Continued*

1. **Possessive Genitive**: G. 362; 366. A. 343 and b. B. 198 and 3. H. 439; 440. HB. 339; 340. Bn. 400–405; 408.

2. **Possessive Pronouns**: G. 362. Remark 1; 309 and 1. A. 299; 302 and a. B. 86. 1, 2; 243. 1 and 3. H. 176; 439. Note 4; 440. 1, Note 2; 503. HB. 339. a; 254–256; 260; 261; 262. 1. Bn. 618; 619; 622.

3. **Dative of Possessor**: G. 349. A. 373 and Note. B. 190; 359. 1. H. 430. HB. 374 and a. Bn. 479.

4. **Dative or Ablative**: G. 348. A. 364. B. 187. 1, a. H. 426. 6. HB. 365. b. Bn. 453.

5. **Dative with Adjectives**: G. 359. A. 383; 384. B. 192. 1, 2. H. 434. 1, 2. HB. 362. I–III. Bn. 487.

6. **Dative with Special Verbs**: G. 346 and Note 3. A. 367 and a; 369. B. 187. II, a, and Note. H. 426. 1 and Note 1, 2 and Note. HB. 362 and Footnote 3. Bn. 456. a; 457.

[1] In Latin this will be "commendation was given to the consul." Compare this use with that of the passive of verbs taking two accusatives, as in the latter part of the same sentence.

7. **Dative with Compounds**: G. 347. A. 370. a, b. B. 187. III, 1, 2. H. 429. HB. 376, a. Bn. 464; 465.

8. **Impersonal Use of Passive**: G. 208. 2; 217. A. 372. B. 187. II, b. H. 426. 3. HB. 290. a, 1); 364. 2. Bn. 459.

HINTS

Genitive and Dative of Possession. The difference between these can best be understood from the study of examples:

(Gen. of Possessor) *This book belongs to Cicero* (*is Cicero's*), **Hīc liber Cicerōnis est.**

(Dat. of Possessor) *Cicero had many books*, **Cicerōnī multī erant librī.**

Dative with Compounds. The rule as generally given is most misleading, and true hardly once in ten times. The safe way is to note in the vocabulary the usage with each verb as it occurs.

EXERCISE III

1. Caesar's wife was Julia, the daughter of Pompey. 2. How many daughters has Pompey? Do these children belong to him? 3. He is leading his own army: [it is] my soldiers, not his, [that] I am leading across the river. 4. Two kings, thoroughly-hostile (sup.) to us, are threatening this state. 5. The man who does not believe others will not be believed [himself]. (Note: This can be well rendered by the "inverted relative" construction, translating in the following clause-order: "who does not believe others, to him it will not be believed"). 6. What man have you seen like this [one], who has saved his country, always served his fellow-citizens, obeyed the laws, appeased public-foes, pardoned private-enemies, [and] been-pleasing-to all who have been associated (**versor**, 1) with

him in this enterprise (**rēs**)? 7. We are approaching a place which is particularly suitable for a camp. 8. Do you desire a revolution? This indeed (**quidem**) seems very like war. 9. This does not please me at all: to others, not to me, is the sight of the enemy pleasant. 10. Are not Catiline's sympathizers (those who sympathize with Catiline) like Catiline? (see 5). 11. Citizens, why do you favor the Gauls? They are not like the Romans, nor have they ever benefited you. 12. Also, they are nearest to the Germans, with whom they no longer are carrying on war; these, however, have always done you harm. 13. We shall resist all who either spare the enemy or have-ill-will-for (envy) the consul; for otherwise the greatest peril will threaten the commonwealth. 14. It will be extremely dangerous for you to place this man in command (with the highest danger will you place this-one in command) of the army, citizens. 15. Gratitude will be felt toward the man (**is**) who does not fail the commonwealth (see 5). 16. The man who was trusted by all has been presented with citizenship (see 5). 17. They have presented the man with citizenship who surrounded the enemy's city with his troops (soldiers). 18. I have not asked your advice, but I have always looked out for your interests and always shall (express by repeating the verb "look out" in the proper tense). 19. Those who have never looked out for the welfare of others will not have their own welfare looked out for (it will not be consulted for. See 5 for order.) 20. Resistance will justly be offered (it will rightly be resisted) to those who neither obey the laws nor benefit their native land in any other manner.

LESSON IV

REVIEW OF CASE CONSTRUCTIONS — *Continued*

1. **Dative of Purpose** ("**Object for Which**"; "**Service**"; "**Double Dative**"): G. 356. 2, 3. A. 382. 1, 2. B. 191. 1, 2. H. 433. 1, 2, 3. HB. 360. a, b; 361. Bn. 483.

2. **Dative of Reference**: G. 350–352. A. 376–378. B. 188. 1, 2, a)–d). H. 425. 2, 4, Note, 432. Bn. 470; 473; 474.

3. **Place Where**: G. 385; 386 and Remark 2; 388; 411 and Remark 1. A. 426. 3; 427. 3, Footnote 1, a; 428. d, e. B. 228. 1, a)–c). H. 483–485. 2. HB. 433; 449 and a. Bn. 588–590; 592; 594; 606–609; 612.

4. **Time When**: G. 393. A. 423. 1. B. 230, 1, 2; 231. H. 486; 487. HB. 439. Bn. 599; 600.

5. **Extent**: G. 335; 336. A. 423. 2; 425. B. 181. H. 417. HB. 387. I, II. Bn. 518; 519.

HINTS

Dative of Purpose. The following points should be noted:

(*a*) The English equivalent for this dative is a predicate noun, or an appositive with *as*.

(*b*) The construction is customary in Latin only with a limited number of abstract nouns, and appears to be in part an attempt to avoid asserting that a concrete noun is *identical* in meaning with an abstract noun.

Translation of "for." When *for* denotes simply the person interested, it may be rendered by the dative, as

The sun shines for all, **Sōl omnibus lūcet.**

When *for* denotes protection or substitution, use the ablative with **prō**, as

It is a happy and glorious (fate) to die for one's country, **Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī.**

When *for* denotes extent, it is, of course, translated by the accusative; but in certain negative expressions the ablative is used. Thus,

I have not seen him for several years, **Complūribus annīs illum nōn vīdī**

Here there is really no idea of extent. The expression means "at no time within the space of several years have I seen him."

If, however, we had such a sentence as

They have not yet been three months in Italy,

where the "not" belongs with "three months" and not with the verb "been," the sense would require the accusative,

Nōndum mensīs trīs in Ītaliā sunt.

Note in this last example how the present tense is used to translate "have been" when accompanied by an expression of duration (**mēnsīs trīs**). In the same way

Iam prīdem hoc *faciō*

means

I have been doing this for a long time now.

Some other translations of "for" will be noticed later.

EXERCISE IV

1. At that time he was very useful (for a great use) both to me and to my brother Quintus. 2. Two legions were left that night as a protection to the camp. 3. In the river [their] shields were a great inconvenience to the soldiers. 4. For many days we did not resist that consul whose measures have always been a [means of] safety to the state. 5. The cavalry were sent many miles as a reinforcement to this legion. 6. That summer he was given nothing as a present. 7. In recent years I have had him as both a help and a protection. 8. To me, at

least, that which has been said seems most charming. 9. In early spring Orgetorix took upon himself the office-of-ambassador to (ad) the states. 10. This (pl.) has been done, not for us only, but also for our children. 11. That which was undertaken by me that winter I undertook, Quirites, for your benefit (for you). 12. That [man] in early youth waged war against the enemies of the Roman people. 13. We staid in that city three months. 14. At Rome Cicero once spoke for two hours in the senate, which nevertheless did not resist his measures. 15. I have not had many conversations with him in recent years. 16. In Corinth, a city of Greece, there were many beautiful[1] statues of the gods. 17. At daybreak he will speak with the enemy's chief. 18. All these things will not be accomplished in one month; in my opinion we shall be in that place for many years. 19. At Carthage; in Italy; in Sicily; in two days; for two days; in the whole [of] Gaul; at Capua; here and there in Asia; in a small town; for the last twenty years (see 7). 20. On that day they traveled (went) thirty miles.

LESSON V

REVIEW OF CASE CONSTRUCTIONS — *Continued*

1. **Limit of Motion**: G. 337 and Remarks 1, 2, 4; 416. 1; 418. 1, 2. A. 221. 2, a, 12, 1, a–c, 22, 1; 426. 2; 427. 2; 428. c, d. B. 182. 1, a), b), 2, a, b, 3. H. 418. 1, 2, 4; 419. 1. HB. 381; 450 and b; 457. 1. Bn. 513–516.

2. **Place Whence. Separation**: G. 390. 1, 2, 3, Remark; 391 and Remark 1. A. 401–402. a; 426. 1; 427. 1; 428. a, e. B. 214. 1, a)–d), 2, 3; 229. 1, a), b), 2. H. 462. 1–4; 463; 464. 1, 2; 465. 1; HB. 408. 1, a, 2, a, 3; 409; 410; 411. a; 412; 451 and a. Bn. 528–531 (last sentence).

[1] In Latin, "many and beautiful."

HINTS

Place and Time. The place to which and the time until which are expressed in the same way in Latin, as

The battle raged till late at night, **Ad multam noctem pugnātum est.**

Similarly, the place from which and the time from which have the same construction.

Translation of "for," continued. When "for" denotes the end of motion, it is expressed by the accusative, with **in** or **ad** if the noun admits it, as

Caesar left for { *Italy* / *Rome* } *at once*, **Statim** { **in Italīam** / **Rōmam** } **Caesar profectus est.**

Watch for other meanings of "for" as the lessons proceed, and reread the "Hints" of Lesson II.

EXERCISE V

1. During the fourth watch he set out from camp, and by (at) the fourth hour arrived at a town belonging-to (of) the enemy. 2. There both sides fought fiercely (it was fought fiercely by both (pl. of **uterque**, denoting two groups) until the tenth hour. 3. First he left Rome for[1] Capua and Brundisium; then, by means of ships, he reached Asia from Italy in a short time. 4. From the fifth hour right on till evening none of the enemy was seen, nor did any one resist our [men]. 5. Then all who had aided Caesar in the earlier war returned to him, a circumstance which (which thing) was of great advantage (dat.) to the

[1] Remember that not the preposition alone, but the sense of the phrase, must be the guide in translating from English. Here, of course, "*for Capua*" denotes the limit of motion.

general. 6. First the Gauls were ushered into the senate; then the consul asked the senators their opinion about them; finally all were taken under the protection of the state. 7. All these were summoned to the senate-house; afterwards, however, they gathered at the consul's home. 8. From home I came here; from here (hence) I shall return home; I shall stay at home till evening. 9. From the city I went to the country; I did not stay in the country long, but from the country I soon returned to Rome. 10. In the country how many things charm us! From daybreak until late-at-night all things are perfectly delightful (sup.) to us. 11. There you will be freed from all the anxieties which once you had at Rome. 12. Everything that you once lacked, but which we used-to-have, now belongs to you (is now yours), by whom we have been robbed of all our possessions (**rēs**). 13. This town was now without (empty of) those who formerly had defended it from the enemy. 14. Everything has been taken from me (dat.) by those who always injure all the good. 15. Soon you will be free from worries: in the country everything will charm you. 16. Unperturbed, I have been deprived of the (**is**) things of which all the citizens have been robbed. 17. Have not many honors been taken from him which once he was most happy to receive (received very gladly)? 18. We had previously been presented by Caesar himself with the weapons which were surrendered (**trādō**) to him on that occasion. 19. Surely you will not (express *surely . . . not* by **num**) rob us of both arms and homes — [us] who never either (neither ever) harmed you or (nor) wanted a change of government or (nor) were unfriendly to anyone who was friendly to you!

LESSON VI

REVIEW OF CASE CONSTRUCTIONS — *Continued*

1. **Genitive of Quality (Descriptive Genitive)**: G. 365 and Remark. A. 345 complete. B. 203. 1, a, 2, 5. H. 440. 3. HB. 355. Bn. 421–423.

2. **Ablative of Quality (Descriptive Ablative)**: G. 400 and Remark 1. A. 415 complete. B. 224. 1. H. 473. 2 and Note 2. HB. 443. Bn. 557.

3. **Ablative of Specification (Respect)**: G. 397. A. 418. B. 226. H. 480. 2, 3. HB. 441. Bn. 556.

4. **Source and Material**: G. 395; 396. A. 403. 1, 2, a, Note 1, d. B. 215. 1, 2. H. 467; 469. 1, 2; 470. 1. HB. 406. 4; 413. a, b. Bn. 532; 533; 539; 420.

5. **Ablative of Cause**: G. 408 and Notes 1–3. A. 404. a–c. B. 219. 1, 2. H. 475. 1–3. HB. 444. a–c. Bn. 546–548.

HINTS

Material. The grammars are not all equally clear on this point. The following is a safe rule to follow in writing.

The material — the actual "stuff" out of which something is made — is denoted

(*a*) by the ablative with **ex**, with or without **factus**:

1. *chains of gold*, **catēnae ex aurō**;
2. *chains made of gold*, **catēnae ex aurō factae.**

(*b*) by an adjective:

golden chains, *chains of gold*, } **catēnae aureae.**

The genitive may be used to show that of which something is composed or consists, when the word which it limits denotes *quantity*, and when this idea of quantity is important; as,

a host of cavalry, **multitūdō equitum.**

Cause. "The ablative denotes the *motive from which*, or the *influence through which* (*by virtue of which*) a thing is done" (MADVIG).

When the cause is something *external*, **ob** or **propter** with the accusative is usual, as

The crops were not yet ripe because of the frosts, **Propter frīgora frūmenta mātūra nōndum erant.**

But this distinction is not always observed.

EXERCISE VI

1. Archias was descended (born) from very noble stock. 2. Were not the Belgae, who were almost equal to the Romans in courage, descended from the Germans? 3. That famous silver eagle has been sent on to Faesulae. 4. One class is [composed] of those who are overwhelmed with debt. 5. Shall we not obey Pompey, a man possessing (of) extraordinary knowledge of warfare (war), unique courage, a most illustrious personality, [and] surpassing good-fortune? 6. For you will very seldom (least often) find a man of this kind, Quirites. 7. Who does not remember his voyage of forty-nine days? 8. Trees of every kind were seen on that hill. 9. A great quantity of silver and gold was abandoned to the Roman soldiers by Mithridates in his retreat. 10. The Germans were men of great strength, but were they equal to the Romans in strength? 11. The trinkets of the women were made of gold and silver. 12. Women wear golden ornaments; but for men the ornaments are swords and spears made of iron. 13. Shall not a man of such (is) modest worth (modesty) be left unharmed by the jurors? 14. In these regions he displayed (was characterized by) the utmost seriousness, [and] no avarice. 15. These men were swayed by their envy of the

consul, a man of the highest courage. 16. On account of his capacity the highest offices will be bestowed upon him. 17. For this (which) reason (rēs), those who rejoiced in Catiline's unpatriotic acts-of-robbery (robberies) will all be put to death for (**propter**) their crimes. 18. All who had been pardoned were powerfully agitated by these circumstances. 19. Because of the greed of the generals, nobody believed them. 20. Those who obey the laws from fear are not men of very great courage; but nevertheless they are of service to the country.

LESSON VII

REVIEW OF CASE CONSTRUCTIONS — *Continued*

1. **Comparison**: G. 296. Remark 1, (a); (b); 297. 2. A. 406; 407 and a; 291. a. B. 217. 1–3; 240. 1, 2. H. 471 and 1; 498. HB. 416, a, c, d; 417. Bn. 541; 542; 545.

2. **Degree of Difference**: G. 403. A. 414. B. 223. H. 479. 1, 2, 3. Bn. 582–584.

3. **Genitive with Adjectives**: G. 374. A. 349. a. B. 204. 1–3. H. 450; 451. 1, 2. HB. 347; 354. Bn. 410; 425.

4. **Genitive with Verbs**: G. 376; 377; 378; 381. A. 350. a, b, d; 352; 354. a, b; 355. B. 205; 206. 1, a, b, 2, a; 208. 1, 2, a, b; 209. 1, a, 2; 210; 211. 1, a. H. 449; 454. 1; 455; 456; 457. HB. 342; 343; 345; 350; 352. 1, 2. Bn. 431; 432; 434; 438–444.

5. **Ablative with *Dignus* and *Indignus***: G. 397. Remark 2. A. 418. b. B. 226. 2. H. 481. HB. 442. Bn. 587.

HINTS

Comparison. In writing the following exercise, it will be well to express comparisons both with and without **quam**, wherever that is possible. Of course **quam** must always be used when the first of the words compared is in any other case than nominative or accusative. Thus, if we should try to translate, without using **quam**, *The farmer's*

horse is larger than that of the physician, we should have **Agricolae equus maior est medicō**; that is, *The farmer's horse is larger than the* ***physician!***

We must write, therefore, **Agricolae equus maior est quam medicī.**

Notice that the "that" in the phrase "than that of" is not to be expressed in Latin.

Genitive with Adjectives. Notice that where English says *skilled* IN, *sharer* IN, the Latin has *skilled* OF, *sharer* OF. This genitive is not partitive, but objective; a sharer is not part of that which he shares, nor a skillful person of that in which his skill is exercised.

Genitive with Verbs. *a.* The perfect of **meminī** has the force of a present, the pluperfect of a perfect, the future perfect of a simple future.

b. Sentences containing the impersonals **paenitet, pudet,** etc., may be written according to the following models:

I repent of this = *it repents me of this,*	**Huius mē paenitet.**
The soldiers were ashamed of their cowardice = *it shamed the soldiers of their cowardice,*	**Mīlitēs īgnāviae pudēbat.**
We deeply repented of having done this,	**Hoc fēcisse nōs maximē paenitēbat.**

c. Master the peculiar construction with the impersonals **interest** and **rēfert.** It is both important and easily forgotten.

EXERCISE VII

1. I shall never forget you, Gaius; I will always be obedient to you. 2. Do you not remember Pompey, who was much more experienced in warfare (war) than all the commanders of that period (time)? 3. For who was like Pompey, or who was his peer (equal to him) at any

time? — [Pompey] who has engaged-in-conflict with his-country's-foe (one word) oftener than any one [else] has quarrelled with a personal-enemy. 4. Catiline neither repents of his crimes nor is he ashamed [of them]. 5. He has been accused of many crimes of which he will never be declared guilty. 6. For the judges are much more eager for money than covetous of praise. 7. This is a little more to your interest than to the praetor's. 8. That, however, concerns them less than [it does] you, who are Catiline's own, and altogether like (sup.) him; it does not affect us, who have neither been forgetful of the laws nor injured the commonwealth in any way. 9. He is full of good counsel, [a man] of the highest worth, who never forgets the injunctions which have been laid (those things which have been enjoined) upon him. 10. The longer we who have been charged with the burning of the city stay in this place, the greater the danger we shall be in. 11. These men are equal in [point of] cultivation, but Marcus is both five years older than his brother, and much braver [than he]. 12. Are not those by whom the country has been kept-safe much more worthy of esteem than those who have called Catiline their friend? 13. We will not lay all the responsibility on that [man], who has never been ashamed of the misfortunes which the citizens have suffered through him. 14. He always rendered to every man his [due]; none has been found more just or patriotic than he. 15. We shall be glad to surrender (gladly shall we surrender) ourselves and all our [possessions] to a man of such justice, and we shall never (nor . . . ever) repent of this act. 16. This spot (place) was not more than a mile away from the enemy's camp. 17. In the third year he was elected consul by the citizens, who deemed him the most deserving of that-high (so great)

office. 18. Have you forgotten the offices which were bestowed upon you (with which you were affected) by the Roman people? Will you not always remember those by whom you were so early raised to the highest position-of-authority? 19. Those who have been pronounced guilty of such villainies will suffer (be affected with) the severest penalties. 20. This concerns Pompey more than [it does] Caesar; for the former was more than three days' journey farther away from that spot than the latter [was].

LESSON VIII

REVIEW OF CASE CONSTRUCTIONS — *Concluded*

1. **Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole):** G. 367; 368; 369 and Remark 1; 370 and Remark 2; 371 and Remarks 1, 2; 372 and Remark 2. A. 346. a, 1–4, c–e. B. 201. 1, a, b, 2, a, b; 355. 2, a. H. 440. 5; 441; 442. 2, 4; 443; 444. 1. HB. 346. a, b, c, e. Bn. 412; 414–416; 418.

2. ***Alius* and *Alter*:** G. 319. A. 315 and a–c. B. 253. 1, 2, 3. H. 516 and 1. HB. 265; 279. 1–3. Bn. 729–733.

3. **Superlatives Denoting Order and Sequence:** G. 291. Remark 2. A. 293. B. 241. 1. H. 497. 4. HB. 244. Bn. 417.

4. **Ablative and Genitive of Price:** G. 404; 379; 380. A. 416; 417 and c. B. 225; 203. 4. H. 478 complete. HB. 427 complete; 356. Bn. 577; 578.

5. **Ablative with Deponents:** G. 407. A. 410. B. 218. 1. H. 477. I. HB. 429. Bn. 572.

6. **Ablative with *Opus* and *Ūsus*:** G. 406. A. 411. B. 118. 2, a, b. H. 477. III and Note. HB. 430. Bn. 573–575.

HINTS

Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole). In general this construction, from its similarity to English, offers few difficulties. It will, however, be necessary to make a careful study of the grammar, in order to discover and learn

certain words which are followed by a genitive in Latin contrary to the English usage, such as

nihil bonī, *no good*,

and the like.

With regard to numerals, it will be best to use the ablative with **ex** or **dē** after **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs,** even though the grammar allows the genitive. This construction should also be used with **quīdam.**

The use with **quisque** and **uterque,** and with such adjectives as **medius, reliquus, summus,** and **extrēmus,** should be carefully learned.

It should be remembered that the *plural* of **mīlle** is followed by a genitive in Latin, although no hint of this is given by the form of the English; thus, while *a thousand soldiers* is **mīlle mīlitēs,** *two thousand soldiers* is **duo mīlia mīlitum** (literally, *two thousands of soldiers*).

EXERCISE VIII

1. A large part of the weapons which the enemy were using have not yet been given up (sing.). 2. Three thousand soldiers were seen on the top of the hill, some of whom fled at once, while (**autem**) others resisted us. 3. A thousand horsemen gave-chase-to these, and surrounded many of them [as they were] floundering in a swamp. 4. Only-a-few of these escaped; but the rest resisted our [men] most valiantly until evening. 5. Then, exhausted by their wounds, all either were killed, or surrendered themselves to our men amid the heaps of slain (lit. bodies). 6. In the middle of the summer he got everything ready which he needed for (**ad**) this war. 7. Those supplies (**rēs**) of which he had no stock he purchased from (**dē**) the Aeduans at a high (great) price.

8. Soon we shall gain possession of the enemy's camp, which is not more than two miles distant from ours. 9. Some of the conspirators will meet in Marcus Laeca's house; others will await their accomplices at the gates. 10. Which of these [two men] is the more deserving of honor? for each of them (each of whom) is a most courageous man, having the highest mental-ability (abl. of description), and having received the most flattering attentions at your hands (affected by your most honorable favors)? 11. Who of these was the first to need help? 12. Which-of-the two leaders required the more soldiers? 13. His characteristics were (there was in him) a lack of application (too little diligence) and an excess of (too much) daring. 14. The conspirators who have been arrested by order of the consul will not enjoy life long. 15. He who has cruelly murdered so many [of] your fellow-citizens has as yet incurred (**suscipiō**) no punishment befitting his crimes. 16. Oh, the glorious renown of my consulship! for I have either slain all our enemies, or forced them out of the city into the-life-of brigands (robbery). 17. Two of the robbers, who were engaged in a constant competition for distinction (always contended with each other about glory), entered into the house of the consul himself, at midnight. 18. I will not be the first to enter upon war — [I] who lately was nearly killed in my own house (loc.). 19. Some fled in (into) one direction, others in another. 20. The one has need of friends, the other of weapons; but both of them are worthy of our friendship.

LESSON IX

MOODS IN DIRECT QUESTIONS. COMMANDS. EXHORTATIONS. PROHIBITIONS

1. **Alternative Questions**: G. 458; 459. A. 334; 335. Note, a–d. B. 162. 4. H. 380 and 1. HB. 234. a. Bn. 372; 373; 378; 379.

2. **The Subjunctive in Direct Questions**: G. 259; 265; 558. A. 444; 462. a. B. 277. H. 557; 559. 4, 5. HB. 503; 513. 1; 515. 1; 517. 1; 519. 1. Bn. 771; 772.

3. **Imperative**: G. 266; 267; 268. 1, 2. A. 448. a; 449. 1, 2, a. B. 281. 1, a), b), 2. H. 560. 2, 4. HB. 496. c, d. Bn. 931–933.

4. **Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive**: G. 262. 3. A. 439. Notes 1 and 2, a. B. 274; 275. H. 559. 1, 2. HB. 500; 501. 2, 3. Bn. 768.

5. **Prohibitions**: G. 271. 2; 263. 2, (b), 3; 275. A. 450. B. 281. 2; 276. a, b. H. 561. 1. HB. 501. 3, a, 1), 2). Bn. 934; 936; 937.

HINTS

Questions in the Subjunctive. The mood of the question depends upon the form of the expected answer. Questions in the indicative are answerable by a statement of fact in the indicative, as

What does he see? *He sees the enemy.*
Quid *videt?* Hostīs *videt.*

Questions in the subjunctive are answerable by an imperative, or a statement of obligation, propriety, or the like, as

What am I to do? *Come here.*
Quid *faciam?* Hūc *venī.*

Imperative. Remember never to use the imperative mood for prohibitions. For expressing these, **nōlī** and **nōlīte** with the infinitive will be the most useful method.

There will be practically no occasion to employ the

future imperative except in the case of certain verbs like **meminī** and **sciō**, where the present form is not in use.

Review in the Grammar the imperative forms of **dīcō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, and **ferō**, and their compounds.

EXERCISE IX

1. What was the limit of Catiline's display of insolence (to what limit did Catiline's daring display itself)? 2. Said[1] the consul: "Are you more disturbed (perf.) by the guard set over the city at night (the city's nocturnal guard), or by the people's anxiety? 3. What was I to do?[2] Should I arrest him at once, or let him go? 4. Who could justly have censured me? What else was I to do? 5. Did the senators display courage and faithfulness in their decision (decree courageously and diligently), or not? 6. Quirites, let us daily protect the city from Catiline's madness. 7. Soldiers, follow your general even to the-farthest-limit-of Gaul. 8. [My] friends, do not forget those who have always both helped you and given you pleasure. 9. Never be ashamed of the leniency which you have displayed (used). 10. Let not those who are thrilled with joy by (**ob**) this event (**rēs**) forget those who are correspondingly (equally) plunged in (cast down with) woe. 11. They are not ashamed to follow their general, are they? 12. Is not this really your army, Pompey? Are not you the general? I am not mistaken (deceived), am I? 13. I was not mistaken, was I, in either the day or the place (did either day or place deceive me)? All the plans that you had formed I both saw and clearly

[1] To introduce direct quotations, use **inquit**, placed after one or more words of the quoted sentence. The above should begin: **Cōnsul "Utrum," inquit, "nocturnō praesidiō,"** etc.

[2] Imperfect tense.

perceived. 14. Shall I not esteem this [man]? Shall I not admire [him]? Shall I not defend him by every [possible] means? 15. Go (set out) into exile, Catiline; cease-to-think-of (forget) burning and killing.

CONNECTED PROSE

Let not merited (true) praise be withheld from Lucullus in (by) my speech, nor (**nēve**) undeserved distinctions (honors which he has not deserved) be bestowed on Pompey by any one. First, however, who would not praise him? Next, who would not be glad to elect (would not gladly elect) him consul? Wherefore, Quirites, be obedient to my words (to me) and place him in charge of this most important enterprise (these so great things).

LESSON X

INDIRECT STATEMENTS

1. **Moods in Declarative Sentences in Indirect Discourse**: G. 648–650. A. 578–580. B. 313; 314. 1; 331. 1. H. 641; 642. HB. 589; 591; 592; 533; 534. Bn. 964; 965; 969; 939.

2. **Tense of the Infinitive**: G. 530; 531. A. 584. a, b; 569. a. B. 270. 1, a)–c), 3, a; 317 and a. H. 617–620. HB. 593; 472. a, b, c. Bn. 939; 942; 945; 946.

3. **Tense of the Subjunctive**: G. 509. 1; 510 and Remark. A. 585; 482. 1, 2; 483; 484 complete; 485. b. B. 267. 1–3; 268. 1–3; 269. 1, 3. H. 542–545. HB. 476; 477; 481; 483. Bn. 781; 782.

4. **Use of Pronouns in Indirect Discourse**: G. 520–522. A. 296 and 2; 300. 1, 2, a; 299. a. B. 244. 1, I, II, a, 5. H. 645 and 1. HB. 533. a. Bn. 668; 675.

5. **Verbs of Hoping and Promising**: G. 423. Remark 5. A. 580. c. B. 331. I. H. 619. 1. HB. 593. a. Bn. 945.

6. **Present and Imperfect with Expressions of Duration**: G. 230; 234. A. 466 and Note 1; 471. b. B. 259. 4; 260. 4. H. 533. 1; 535. 1. HB. 485. Bn. 749; 753.

HINTS

Indirect Discourse. English has two forms of indirect quotation :

(*a*) *We know* ***that this is true***, and
(*b*) *We know this* ***to be true***.

Latin employs only one of these, the second. Thus,

Scīmus hoc *esse* vērum.

The easiest and surest way to write sentences of the indirect form is to recast them in the form of (*b*), above. In this way the second sentence of Exercise II becomes

The consul says himself ***to be afraid***, etc.,

which can be translated directly into Latin.

Tense of the Infinitive. The present infinitive of Latin must sometimes be used to translate what in English requires a past tense. Thus,

He said that he ***was*** *tired*,

when changed according to the suggestion of the preceding paragraph, becomes

He said himself ***to be*** *tired*,

which is in Latin

Dīxit sē dēfessum *esse*.

To make this still clearer, suppose that we had

Dīxit sē dēfessum *fuisse*.

This would be, literally,

He said himself ***to have been*** *tired*,

or, in more natural English,

He said that he ***had been*** *tired*.

When in doubt, imagine yourself as saying the thing which is quoted, heard, etc., and use a present, perfect, or

future infinitive, according as the time of your verb is present, past, or future. Thus, in the first case, the speaker must have said

I am tired, **Dēfessus sum**;

while in the second he said

I { *was* / *have been* / *had been* } *tired*, **Dēfessus** { **eram**, / **fuī**, / **fūeram**. }

Finally, remember that the signs of the future infinitive in Latin are "will," "would," "going to," and the like. Thus,

He said that he would come, **Dīxit sē *ventūrum (esse)*.**

Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses. If the action described occurs AT THE SAME TIME as that of the main verb, use the present or imperfect subjunctive, according to the sequence; if it occurs BEFORE the time of the main verb, use the perfect or pluperfect, according to the sequence. The principle involved in cases where the action occurs at a later time than that of the main verb is treated in Lesson XI.

Verbs of Hoping and Promising. Since promising is a kind of telling, and hoping an action of the mind, verbs meaning "to hope" and "to promise" are regularly followed by the construction of indirect discourse. And since hopes generally and promises always are concerned with the future, it is also evident why the future is the tense of the infinitive habitually used with such verbs.

Use with *Meminī*. **Meminī** takes the present infinitive of the recollection of a personal experience, as

I remember his coming, **Meminī eum venīre.**

Pronouns. In sentences beginning "*He said that he*," "*They knew that they*," and the like, the translation of the

second pronoun may be troublesome. If the second pronoun refers to the same person as the first, meaning, "*A said that A*," "*B knew that B*," etc., the reflexive **sē** must be used. If the second pronoun refers to some other person, and means "*A said that X*," "*B knew that Y*," etc., use the accusative of **is, ea, id** or of **ille, illa, illud**.

Thus,

They said that they would not go.

may be **Negāvērunt *sē* itūrōs,**

or **Negāvērunt *eōs* itūrōs.**

The first means that the speakers themselves refused to go; the second, that they reported the refusal of others.

In general, observe also that in subordinate clauses which express the thought, words, or will of the subject of the leading verb, **sē** (or, to avoid ambiguity, **ipse**), and not **ille** or **is**, is used to refer to that subject when the verb is in the third person. For the reflexive of the first and second person, forms of **ego** and **tū** must be used.

EXERCISE X

1. He denies that he either has failed-in-his duty to the commonwealth, or is forming plans against it, or will harm the citizens in any way. 2. The consul said that he had replied to the ambassadors that the Roman people pardoned them and would always be on friendly terms (in friendship) with them. 3. The general said, "I have been informed that the enemy's camp will be pitched where we formerly pitched our own." 4. They promise to give the grain which the Roman people has demanded of them. 5. We hope either to crush the fellow or to check all his attempts and movements. 6. You are not sorry, are you, that the city, which he has long since been threatening with destruction, has been rescued from its

perilous-position (danger)? 7. For a long time now I have felt that all that we had said in the meeting would be divulged. 8. I have long since known that the soldiers would not follow one (is) who they thought had promised to arrest Pompey. 9. The scouts bring word that the hill which our men had seized the day before is now in the possession of (held by) the enemy. 10. He says that he remembers that Gnaeus Pompey prepared for this great (this so great) war at the end of winter, entered upon it in early spring, [and] finished it by (in) midsummer. 11. They found that all the reports which the envoys had brought back (all which the envoys had reported) about him were true. 12. For they had reported that he understood that our troops were soon going to make an attack on the camp which he had pitched on the top of the hill. 13. All are both pronounced and considered enemies who hope to be kings in a state whose citizens have declared that they will never have kings. 14. He said that he did not repent of this deed, which he had done with good intentions, and that he had never tried to avoid the enemy's attack. 15. Shall I believe that any plans which you have formed, Catiline, are free from treachery? or are you unaware that I know that you confessed that you feigned many things which were afterwards discovered to be false?

CONNECTED PROSE

I do admit, Quirites, that I once hoped to be elected consul by you; but now I am not sorry that you have replied to me that this did not please you at all. For I am not ignorant that at this most-important (**tantus**) crisis [in the fortunes] of the commonwealth, there is need of men more skilled in warfare [than I].

LESSON XI

INDIRECT QUESTIONS AND COMMANDS

1. **Subjunctive in Indirect Questions**: G. 460. 1, (a), (b); 461; 467 and Remark 2. A. 573; 574. B. 300. 1, a, Note, b), 2, 3, 4, a. H. 649. II, 1–3; 650. 1, 2; 651. 1. HB. 537. b, c, d, 1), 2). Bn. 846–848; 853.

2. **Sequence of Tenses, Continued**: G. 511; 514. A. 575 and a, b. Review references under Lesson X for the other grammars.

3. **Commands in Indirect Discourse**: G. 652. A. 588 and a, Notes. B. 316 and a. H. 642. 4, 5. HB. 538. Bn. 977.

4. **First Periphrastic Conjugation**: G. 514. Rule I (b); 515. Rule II. A. 575. a, b. B. 269. 3. H. 531; 649. II, 1. HB. 470. 4, a. Bn. 794.

HINTS

Indirect Questions. English usually employs no auxiliary, such as *should* or *might*, to suggest the subjunctive which is necessary in turning indirect questions into Latin. Sometimes the beginner confounds indirect questions with relative clauses. Remember that indirect questions (*a*) must be introduced by some interrogative word, and (*b*) are substantive clauses, being either the subject or the object of some verb of the class described in the grammar (rarely appositive). Thus,

Subject: *What you did* | *was seen*,
Quid facerēs | **vīsum est.**

Object: *We saw* | *what you did*,
Vīdimus | **quid facerēs.**

Sequence of Tenses. Note the following points:

(*a*) In any given dependent clause which takes the subjunctive, only TWO tenses are possible. The problem is to determine which one of these we shall use.

(*b*) In writing indirect questions, the tense used in English is a sufficient guide, with one exception.

Thus,

(1) *I do not know why he* { *laughs* (*a*) / *is laughing* (*b*) / *does laugh* (*c*) }, **nesciō quid rīdeat** (pres. subj.);

(2) *I did not know why he was laughing*, **nescīvī quid rīdēret** (impf. subj.);

(3) *I do not know why he* { *laughed* (*a*) / *has laughed* (*b*) / *was laughing* (*c*) }, **nesciō quid rīserit** (perf. subj.);

(4) *I did not know why he had laughed*, **nescīvī quid rīsisset** (plup. subj.).

In sentence (*c*) of the third form we must be on our guard against using the imperfect subjunctive; the PERFECT being the tense which is normally used to express past time when the main verb is primary.

First Periphrastic. This form must be used when the indirect question inquires what *will* or *would* be the case.

Note, however, that if this question be really deliberative, that is, asks what one *is to* or *was to* do, the simple present or imperfect subjunctive is sufficient, as in Sentence 4 of the following exercise.

Note carefully the various English equivalents for the periphrastic future. Thus,

Interrogāvī quid factūrus essēs

might mean *I asked what you* { *were going to do*, / *were about to do*, / *were likely to do*, / *intended to do*, / *would do*, etc. }

EXERCISE XI

1. First he asked me whence I came and whither I was bound (setting out); then of what I was in search (what I sought); finally the names of both my father and my

mother. 2. Let us not reveal to any one what things our general lacks, nor what we have overheard, nor by what method we intend to overpower Catiline. 3. Think from how many and how great dangers the consul has saved the commonwealth, which you know a single (one) night nearly destroyed. 4. Then you will more easily determine whom you shall place in command of this (so) great war. 5. I do not know whom they are going to place in command of this war which is being made on us and our tributaries. 6. "A certain [man]," said Cicero, "asked Catiline whether the expressions on the faces (faces and expressions) of the senators did not disturb him at all (moved him nothing)." 7. But these cried out that Catiline was his country's bane, and should go from the city at once. 8. I believe that he wholly forgot whether the senate had decreed this, or not. 9. I replied to the soldiers that it was not yet time for battle, [and] that they should stay (hold themselves) in camp (abl. without **in**). 10. Tell me, Cicero, how numerous and how important [the] states [are which] have united on account of (**causā**) this war. 11. The consul said, "I know well, Quirites, both what opinion you hold concerning me, and what you ordain for others." 12. He said that the citizens should depart to their homes, and protect them by guards and patrols just as on the past night. 13. He said that their dwellings would be protected by the man (**ille**) who not once only, but again and again, at the greatest risk to himself (at his own very great risk), had rescued the city from [the hands of] those who had hoped to gain possession of it. 14. For he was waiting-to-see if any one would resist them, and (or) what plan the enemy were forming. 15. The conspirators did not know whether the city would have an adequate (enough) guard, or not.

CONNECTED PROSE

Some asked the consul what he had done about these matters, and what they themselves should do. To these (to whom) he replied that they should return to their homes, which he would render safe by the measures he should take, his strenuous endeavors, and the risks he should run (his measures, labors, risks).

LESSON XII

PERSONAL AND IMPERSONAL PASSIVE. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

1. **Personal and Impersonal Passive**: G. 528. A. 330. a, 1, 2, b, 1. B. 332. a)–d) and Note. H. 611. 1, 2, and Notes. HB. 590, complete. Bn. 958, 959.

2. **Gerund**: G. 425; 426. A. 502. B. 338. 1–5. H. 624. HB. 611 complete; 612 complete. Bn. 1003–1005.

3. **Gerundive**: G. 427 and Remarks 4 and 5; 428 and Remarks 1 and 2; 429, 430–433. A. 503 and a; 504. b, c; 505–507. B. 339. 1–5; 7; 337. 8, b), 2), 7. H. 623 and 1; 625; 626. 1–3; 628–631. HB. 609; 610; 612, complete; 613, complete; 614. Bn. 1005; 1009; 1011; 1013; 1014.

4. **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation**: G. 251. 1, 2. A. 158. d, 1; 194. b; (196); 500. 2; 372 (see the last example). B. 115; 337. 8, b), 1). H. 621. 1, 2. HB. 162; 600. 3, a. Bn. 1000; 1001.

5. **Dative of the Agent**: G. 355 and Remark. A. 374. a, Note 1. B. 189. 1, a. H. 431 and 1, with the Footnote. HB. 373. 1. Bn. 480; 481.

HINTS

Compound Infinitives. Remember that after the personal passive, a compound infinitive form (future active or perfect passive) is put in the nominative, agreeing with the subject of the leading verb. Otherwise, of course, it would agree with its own subject accusative. Thus,

(Personal) *They are said to have tried* (*It is said that they tried*)
Dīcuntur cōnātī esse.

(Impersonal) *It was said that they had tried* (*They were said to have tried*),
Dictum est eōs cōnātōs esse.

The reason is that, in the personal construction, the infinitive is really complementary; and therefore the participle, like other adjectives with the complementary infinitive, is in the nominative case.

Verbals in *-ing*. Distinguish between the English present participle, which is an adjective, and the gerund or "infinitive in *-ing*," which is a noun; thus,

Participle: *a bird flying*, **avis volāns.**
Gerund: *the power of flying*, **potestās volandī.**

Gerund and Gerundive. It will be safest to write the gerundive rather than the gerund wherever the verb is transitive and the object expressed.

Gerundive with Special Verbs. The use of the gerundive in agreement with the object of such verbs as **dō, tribuō, cūrō**, etc., to express purpose can be readily understood by attention to the literal rendering, although the English is awkward. Thus,

Agrōs iīs colendōs dedit

is literally, *He gave them fields to-be-tilled*,
that is, *He gave them fields to till.*

Genitive with *Causā*. Remember that **causā** and **grātiā** must always FOLLOW the genitive. This genitive denotes the *end in view*; therefore when the cause is not something to be accomplished, but is an established basis for action, it is expressed by **ob** or **propter**, or by the ablative of cause.

Second Periphrastic. The English sentence must be recast in the passive form; thus,

ENGLISH	LATIN
I must do these things = *These things are to be done by me,*	**Haec facienda sunt mihi.**

This would also be the translation for

I have to do this, or *I should do this.*

Notice that when the verb is transitive, the gerundive agrees with the subject of the passive, as **facienda** with **haec** above. When intransitive, the neuter singular is used (impersonal construction); as,

I must speak of Pompey's matchless prowess, **Dē eximiā Pompeī virtūte mihi est dīcendum.**

EXERCISE XII

1. Some supposed that Catiline had formed plans for destroying the whole world with fire and sword. 2. Many are said to have escaped from Rome for the sake of their own preservation (of preserving themselves). 3. The place seemed to be suitable for pitching camp. 4. It was said that they had escaped by fastening ships together. 5. I must pass over these [points] in my speech (in speaking) [as] belonging too much to the past (too ancient). 6. Should not all who are truly patriotic obey the laws? 7. He said that those who had formed a plan to overthrow (for overthrowing) the laws must be restrained by imprisonment (prison) and chains. 8. His most distinguished grandfather, a man of consular rank and full of good sense, whose friendship I long enjoyed (whom I long used [as] a friend) replied that not even a tribune of the plebs ought to be set free if he had (who had) conspired against the general welfare (safety of all). 9. Two-days are

deemed sufficient for completing these arrangements (rēs). 10. The consul said, "We must rescue the city from the jaws of death." 11. A new legion had to be enrolled in Nearer Gaul in order to (ad) put down this insurrection. 12. He has had a bridge built (faciō) over (in) the river. 13. Let no observance (let not any thing) be omitted which may tend (subj.) to appease the gods. 14. The consul said that Lentulus had assigned him to Cethegus to butcher, the other citizens, to Gabinius to kill, [and] the whole [of] Italy to Catiline to ravage and plunder. 15. Let us stay here for the purpose of resisting the gladiators.

CONNECTED PROSE

The same night it is said that two Roman knights promised to go to the consul's house at dawn for the purpose of killing him (ipse). Catiline gladly gave them this permission (to whom Catiline gladly intrusted this), for no one had resisted his designs so vigorously as (quam) [had] Cicero.

LESSON XIII

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND AS OBJECT. LICET. OPORTET. NECESSE EST

1. **Infinitive as Subject**: G. 422. A. 452. 1. B. 327. 1. H. 615. HB. 585. a, b, d; 597. 1, a). Bn. 948.

2. **Infinitive as Object (Complementary)**: G. 423. 1, 2. A. 456 and Note. B. 328. 1, 2. H. 607. 1, 2. HB. 586. a; 587; 588. Bn. 951.

3. **Gender of the Infinitive**: G. 20. III; 422. A. 33. B. 15. 3. H. 70. HB. 58. 3. Bn. 59.

4. *Licet, Necesse Est, Oportet:* G. 553. 4; 535. A. 331. i, Notes 1, 3; 332. a, 2. B. 295. 6, 8; 327; 330. H. 564. II, 1, 615. HB. 502. 3, c; 513. 5; 531. 2; 585. Bn. 462; 828; 948.

HINTS

Difference between Latin and English Uses of the Infinitive. By analyzing sentences containing the English infinitive we find it has the following uses:

1. Noun use.
   - Subject of a verb, ***To do this*** | ***is folly***.
   - Object of a verb, ***I like*** | ***to read***.
   - Apposition, ***This is pleasant***, | ***to find you at home***.
2. Adverb use.
   - Modifies a verb, ***We came*** | ***to see you***.
   - Modifies an adjective, ***This is easy*** | ***to do***.
3. Adjective use.
   - Modifies a noun or pronoun, ***Some books are to be tasted***.

In classical Latin prose the infinitive is, generally speaking, used only as a noun.

Infinitive as Subject. It should be remembered that the verbal noun in *-ing* is often used in English in place of the subject-infinitive proper. Thus,

Dulce est *rīdēre*

may be the equivalent of either

(*It*) ***is pleasant to laugh***,
or ***To laugh is pleasant***,
or ***Laughing is pleasant***.

Infinitive as Object. Because of the confusion between certain infinitive and subjunctive constructions in Latin, it is desirable to memorize the subjoined list of common verbs which regularly take an infinitive as their object or complement. Most of these are required in the exercise which follows:

volō, *wish, be willing*.
nōlō, *not wish, be unwilling*.
cupiō, *desire*.
mālō, *prefer*.
possum, *can, be able*.
dēbeō, *ought*.
cōnsuēscō, *become accustomed*.
soleō, *be accustomed, be used*.
statuō, **cōnstituō** } *determine, decide*.
cōgō, *compel*.
audeō, *dare, venture*.

dubitō, *hesitate.*	**dēsistō** / **dēsinō** } *cease, stop.*
parō, *prepare, make ready.*	
cōnor, *try, attempt.*	**iubeō**, *bid, command.*
incipiō, *begin.*	**vetō**, *forbid.*
coepī, *began.*	**sinō**, *permit, allow.*
prohībeō, *prevent.*	**patior**, *suffer, permit.*

Auxiliary Verbs. Subjoined is a table of the most usual modes of rendering May, Can, Must, and Ought in Latin.

(1) May (denoting *permission* or *freedom to perform* an act):

You may do this.
- (*a*) **Tē hoc facere | licet.**
- (*b*) **Tibi | hoc facere | licet.**
- (*c*) **Hoc faciās | licet.**

In (*a*), **tē** is the subject of **facere.** In (*b*), **tibi** is the indirect object of **licet.** In (*c*), **hoc faciās** is the subject of **licet.**

(2) Can:

You can do this, **Hoc facere potes.**

(3) Must:

You must do this.
- (*a*) **Hoc tibi faciendum est.**
- (*b*) 1. **Tē hoc facere** / 2. **Hoc faciās** } **oportet.**
- (*c*) 1. **Tē hoc facere** / 2. **Tibi hoc facere** / 3. **Hoc faciās** } **necesse est.**

These do not mean precisely the same thing: (*a*) denotes that something is *to be done*, (*b*) that the given action is *fitting* under the circumstances, (*c*) that it is *inevitable.*

(4) Ought:

You ought to do this.
- (*a*) **Hoc facere dēbēs.**
- (*b*) 1. **Tē hoc facere** / 2. **Hoc faciās** } **oportet.**

Of these, (*a*) denotes moral obligation; while (*b*), as in (3), denotes what is fitting under the circumstances.

Past Tenses. Remember that with the verbs just mentioned the PRESENT tense of the infinitive must be used, only the auxiliary being put in the perfect tense. Thus,

You ought to have done this. { (*a*) Hoc facere *dēbuisti*. (*b*) { 1. Tē hoc facere / 2. Hoc facerēs } *oportuit*.

He could have gone, Ire *potuit*, etc.

EXERCISE XIII

1. Cannot the walls of a private house keep the words of the conspirators (conspiracy) secret? 2. The wise are in the habit of doing (are wont to do) not what they desire, but what they can. 3. Ought that [man] to be put to death through whose efforts we have lately been freed from fear? 4. How exceedingly I think they are to be feared, you may appreciate from this (hence). 5. He wants to be just; we know that he would rather pardon [them] all than force any one to be dragged to [his] death. 6. He ought not to have hesitated to start, for with our help he could easily have resisted the robbers. 7. He thought that he ought to go to Manlius at (to) Faesulae, for he had heard that he had forbidden any one to approach the city. 8. I will not permit, I will not suffer those who ought to have left the city long ago by command of the consul to remain in order to (ad) destroy the commonwealth. 9. He had made up his mind to give up (cease from) this attempt, for he realized that he could not without danger attain that [end] which he nevertheless most madly desired. 10. It is permissible for me to do many things which nevertheless I see should not be done; for a just and patriotic man wishes to obey not only the laws but the gods also. 11. Whether you wish this or do not wish it, it is inevitable that what-you-possess (ista) be

resigned to some fugitive-slave or gladiator. 12. Is it not easier to seem good than to be good? 13. It is not so hard, is it? to command others to be good as to try to do these same things ourselves. 14. I am not now beginning to do the work; for many years I have been doing (pres.) this same thing which you have lately begun, and of which you ought to have made a beginning long ago. 15. We both dare and are ready to attempt everything which brave and patriotic men may honorably do.

CONNECTED PROSE

In the senate at Rome one of the senators said that he had never (denied that he had ever) tried to harm the commonwealth. He further said both that it could not be harmed at all by him (nothing could be harmed to it by himself), and that it was much easier for one (**aliquis**) to charge others with doing a wrong than to be just and brave himself. Some, however, thought that he ought not to have said this (pl.).

LESSON XIV

PURPOSE AND RESULT. ATTRACTION. SUPINES

1. **Clauses of Purpose (Final Clauses)**: G. 545; 630. A. 529–531. B. 282. 1, a, d, 2. H. 568. 2, 6; 590. HB. 502. 2, a–c. Bn. 812; 815.

2. **Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses)**: G. 552. 1, 2. A. 537. 1, a, c; 538. B. 284. 1, 2; H. 570; 571. 1, 2, 3. HB. 513. 4; 519. 3; 521. 2. Bn. 818–820.

3. **Sequence of Tenses**: G. 509. 1; 510; 512; 513. A. 482. 1, 2; 483; 485. c. B. 267. 1–3; 268. 1, 6. H. 542; 543; 550. HB. 476; 477; 478 (third example under the Subjunctive). Bn. 781; 785.

4. **Subjunctive by Attraction (Integral Part)**: G. 508. 4; 629. A. 593. B. 324. 1, 2. H. 652. HB. 539. Bn. 905.

5. **Accusative Supine**: G. 435. A. 509. B. 340. 1, a. H. 633. HB. 618 Bn. 1015.

6. **Ablative Supine**: G. 436. 2. A. 510. Notes 1 and 2. B. 340. 2, a, b. H. 635. 1, 2. HB. 619. 1 and Note 1. Bn. 1017.

HINTS

Purpose Clauses in English. In the sentence

He left all to save his country,

notice that *to save*

(*a*) is adverbial, modifying *left*, and

(*b*) may be replaced by a clause beginning "in order that," without affecting the sense. Thus,

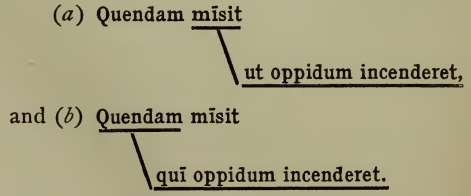
He left all in order that he might save his country,

which becomes in Latin,

Omnia relīquit ut patriam servāret.

This furnishes a test by which to distinguish the English infinitive expressing purpose from other uses of the infinitive. Remember that the infinitive must not be used to express purpose in Latin.

Relative Clauses of Purpose. The difference between a purpose clause introduced by a conjunction and one introduced by a relative is largely a matter of emphasis. Thus, if we analyze these two ways of expressing *He sent a certain man to fire the town*, we get



In (*a*) **ut . . . incenderet** is adverbial, modifying and so emphasizing **mīsit.** In (*b*) **quī . . . incenderet** is adjectival, modifying and so emphasizing **quendam.** In (*a*) the

dependent clause merely tells us what the purpose was in sending. In (*b*) we think of the purpose in close connection with the one who was to carry it out. In general, the relative form is more common when the purpose can be referred to an antecedent in this way.

Negative Clauses. As a negative purpose clause must be introduced by **nē**, the English cannot always be literally translated as it can be in negative clauses of result. Compare the following:

RESULT	PURPOSE
that no one . . . . **ut nēmō** . . .	**nē quis** . . . (literally, *lest any one*).
that nothing . . . **ut nihil** . . .	**nē quid** . . . (literally, *lest anything*).
that never . . . . **ut numquam**	**nē umquam** (literally, *lest ever*).
that nowhere . . . **ut nusquam**	**nē usquam** (literally, *lest anywhere*).

Quō. Do not forget that purpose clauses containing a comparative are regularly introduced by **quō**. Thus,

He said this, the more easily to escape blame,

Haec dīxit, quō facilius culpam vītāret (literally, *whereby he might more easily escape blame*).

Sequence of Tenses. We are familiar with this in English. For instance, we say

I do this that I may help you,
but *I did this that I might help you.*

It is easy to master the restrictions which Latin places on the use of the tenses of the subjunctive by observing how they are used in each construction. Thus:

Clauses of purpose use only two tenses — present and imperfect.

Clauses of result use three commonly, — present, imperfect, and perfect, — the last of these without regard to the usual law that it must follow only principal tenses.

Subjunctive by Attraction. This construction is not so mysterious as it seems. Precisely as many people say "*those* kind of things" instead of the grammatically correct "*that* kind of things," because the word "things" comes into their minds before the word "kind," so when one sets out to use a clause containing a subjunctive, he will often half unconsciously put in the subjunctive the verb of some other clause which is intimately connected in thought with the original clause. But this was not by any means an invariable rule; the mood of the speaker determined the mood of the verb.

It should also be remembered that many subjunctives referred to the principle of "attraction" are better explained as indirect discourse.

EXERCISE XIV

1. He rushed out of the senate-house to escape [from] those who wished to lay violent hands on him. 2. We must make war on Mithridates, so that that wicked [man] may not deprive our tributaries of [their] liberty. 3. Ambassadors were sent to Caesar to ask for aid, and-he (use rel.) was so touched by their entreaties that they were enabled to gain every [favor] that they asked. 4. Quirites, [for] our generals so to be engaged among the allies and foreign nations as to (that they) have no thought (consider nothing else) except about glory and the public interests is not an easy [thing] to do. 5. It is hard to say how we are hated by foreign nations on account of the outrageous conduct (outrages) of those whom we have sent to them in recent years with a general's authority. 6. It is hard to say whether Catiline set out for Faesulae in order to take the place of Manlius, or to escape the severity of the laws. 7. With your eyes and ears, Quirites, observe these proofs

of the crime, for they are (which are) so clear that now it seems that not men but the immortal gods brought them to our notice. 8. The conspirators did not think that they were safe within the city's defenses, nor (not) within the walls of a private house, where (whither) they had gathered so that the night might be able to conceal their infamous assemblies by its darkness. 9. Now change that purpose of yours, Catiline, that no one may be able to know how many times you have aimed at the consul's life. 10. The city is protected by such strong (**tantus**) guards that no one can go out or in without the order of the consul. 11. The guards will watch faithfully, so that no harm can be done (nothing can be harmed) to the city by depraved citizens. 12. They watched so faithfully that neither Catiline's madness nor the cruelty of Lentulus could do any harm (harm anything) to the city. 13. Soon with all his forces he will set out from that camp at Faesulae for Rome, in order to (**ad**) set the temples and dwellings of the city on fire with torches, to lead the women and children into slavery, [and] to lay waste the whole commonwealth with fire and sword. 14. [It is] for the purpose of checking these designs [that] I have come here, so that (**quō**) you may be the better able to resist those desperate [men]. 15. He hopes to institute (make) such a massacre that no one will be left even to tell of the ruin of this great and powerful nation (so great a power).

CONNECTED PROSE

Those who had won in this fight (abl. of means) behaved so that it was hard to tell whether the survivors dreaded their prowess or esteemed their humanity the more. For they had not come into these parts (regions) to exercise their authority cruelly, but to restore peace.

LESSON XV

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH UT AND NĒ

1. **Substantive Clauses of Purpose (Final Clauses)**: G. 544. II; 546. 1, 2, Remarks 2, 3; 548; 549. A. 560; 561. a; 563. a, b, 1, 2, c–e; 558. b. B. 294; 295. 1–5, a; 296. 1. H. 563; 564. I, II; 565. 1–5; 566; 568. 2, 6–8. HB. 502. 2, b, 3, a. Bn. 821; 825–827.

2. **Substantive Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses)**: G. 553. 1, (2), 3, 4. A. 568 and Note 1; 569. 1. B. 297, complete. H. 594. II; 595. 1, 2; 596. 2. HB. 517. 3; 519. 4, a; 521. 3, a). Bn. 841–843.

3. **Substantive Clauses of Fear**: G. 550. 1, 2. A. 564. B. 296. 2. H. 567. 1, 2. HB. 502. 4. Bn. 838; 839.

HINTS

Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Review the list of verbs which may be followed by an infinitive, given in Lesson XIII. Then learn the following list of very common verbs which require the subjunctive with **ut** or **nē**.

petō, *ask* (request or demand).	**hortor**, *urge, encourage.*
postulō, *ask* (as a right).	**moneō**, *advise, warn.*
quaerō, *ask* (inquire).	**persuādeō**, *persuade.*
rogō, *ask* (in any way).	**imperō**, *command.*

It should be remembered that these lists are typical, not complete. Furthermore, there are verbs in each list which sometimes are followed by other constructions than those indicated.

Double Use of the Same Verb. Verbs often take different constructions according to their meaning. Thus,

I persuaded them to leave is **Illīs persuāsī** ***ut discēderent;***
but *I persuaded them that he had left* is **Illīs persuāsī** ***eum discessisse.***

In the first case, *to leave* is in the subjunctive because it expresses something *willed* or *intended;* in the second case, *I persuaded them* means *I convinced them*, that is,

made them believe, and so is followed by the infinitive of indirect discourse.

EXERCISE XV

1. The outcome was that the soldiers preferred to return to the place (thither) whence they had come [rather] than to advance farther. 2. From these circumstances it came to pass that the people were afraid that the slaves who favored Catiline's cause (pl. of **rēs**) would be aroused to [the point of making] war. 3. Those who seemed to fear that the consul would not have a sufficient force to (**ad**) accomplish these ends (things) were told that they had very little cause for alarm (that they should be alarmed very little). 4. It was replied that he had not yet been induced to do what (that which) was in harmony with the principles of the ancients. 5. Will he be able to bring his mind to the point of going (to go) into exile? Will he not be afraid that as an exile he may die among strangers? — that they will not even bury one (**is**) whom they have always looked upon as (deemed) an enemy? 6. These were instructed to be obedient to the consul. 7. They were likewise instructed that the consul was aiding, watching, providing for the commonwealth, so that they might be unable (neg. with **possum**) to do it any (**quid**) harm. 8. The senate decreed that the consuls should look to it that the commonwealth should suffer no harm (not take anything of harm). 9. This is the advice he gave me (this he advised me): not to be afraid that he would not have the city defended. 10. Be sure to play (be) the man, that you may not appear cowardly. 11. The praetor urged the people to place Pompey in command of this important (this so great) war, and not (**nēve**) to make the mistake of honoring any one with so great an office who was neither worthy of respect nor well qualified for the

conduct of (ger.) a war. 12. It happened that no one could persuade him that this civil war amounted to (was) anything. 13. I do not command you to go into exile, but I should like (subj. of **volō**) to recommend this to you. 14. One class of the conspirators, which was burdened with debt, he reminded of their danger, and urged them for the future to avoid the suspicion of crime. 15. I beseech you to do what your representatives promised me you would do.

CONNECTED PROSE

The senate decreed that all who in any place (everywhere) had been Catiline's accomplices should be reckoned as (deemed) enemies, and that no one should be pardoned who had been declared guilty of the murder of citizens. From this (which things) it came to pass that the number of those who were taking refuge in (fleeing to) Manlius' camp was increasing day by day.

LESSON XVI

QUĪN AND QUŌ MINUS. CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

1. **Clauses of Characteristic**: G. 631. 1, 2, Remark. A. 537. 2, Notes; 535. a, Notes 1, 2, b. B. 283. 1, 2, 4; 282. 3; 284. 2. H. 591. 1, 2, 4, 5, 7. HB. 513. 3; 515. 2; 517. 2; 519. 2; 521. 1, a, b, c. Bn. 798.

2. ***Quīn* and *Quō minus*:** G. 547; 548. Note 2; 549; 554; 555. 1, 2; 556. A. 558. a, b; 559. B. 283. 4; 284. 3; 295. 3; 298. H. 595. 1, 2, 4; 568 and 8. HB. 502. 3, b); 519. 4, b); 521. 1, 2, 3, b). Bn. 802; 829; 832–834.

HINTS

Verbs of Hindering and Refusing. Latin sometimes regards a clause dependent on such a verb as final, sometimes as consecutive. For practical purposes, follow this rule:

(*a*) If the verb of hindering is *not* negatived, use **nē** or **quō minus** with the subjunctive.

(*b*) If the verb of hindering *is* negatived, use **quō minus** or **quīn** with the subjunctive. Thus,

(*a*) *I will hinder you from doing that,*
- (1) **Tē impediam *nē* id faciās.**
- (2) **Tē impediam** } ***quō minus* id faciās.**

(*b*) *I will not hinder you from doing that,*
- (3) **Tē *nōn* impediam** } ***quō minus* id faciās.**
- (4) **Tē *nōn* impediam *quīn* id faciās.**

Similarly,

(*a*) *They refused to come.*
- (1) **Recūsāvērunt *ne* venīrent.**
- (2) **Recūsāvērunt** } ***quō minus* venīrent.**

(*b*) *They did not refuse to come,*
- (3) **Nōn recūsāvērunt** } ***quō minus* venīrent.**
- (4) **Nōn recūsāvērunt *quīn* venīrent.**

Clauses of Characteristic. In deciding whether to use the indicative or subjunctive in a relative clause, the first thing to consider is the ANTECEDENT. Subjoined is a list of the antecedents most commonly accompanied by a relative clause with the verb in the subjunctive. The general distinction between relative clauses which take the indicative and those which take the subjunctive will appear from the following: the sentence

Nōn is est quī cīvitātī *īnsidiātur*, *He is not the man who is plotting against the state*,

means merely that on this particular occasion this man is not a conspirator; but

Nōn is est quī cīvitātī *īnsidiētur*, *He is not the man to (who would) plot against the state*,

means more — that not only is this man not at present a conspirator, but that he does not belong to the conspirator *class*.

It will be safest, until you are very familiar with the construction, to restrict your use of such clauses to those which correspond with the following list.

Typical Clauses of Characteristic

(*a*) *He is* { *suitable* / *worthy* / *unworthy* } *to receive honor,* { 1. *Idōneus* / 2. *Dignus* / 3. *Indignus* } est quī honōre adficiātur.

2 and 3 may also be translated *worthy* (*unworthy*) *of receiving honor*. *This is worth hearing* would be **Hoc dignum est** *quod audiātur.*

(*b*) *There are* { *those* / *some* } *who say this is unjust,*

Sunt *quī* **dīcant hoc iniūstum esse.**

(*c*) { *There is no one* / *There are none* } *who believe*(*s*) (*to believe*) *you,*

Nēmō est / *Nūllī* sunt } *quī* tibi { crēdat, / crēdant.

(*d*) *Those disagreements were* **such that** *they were settled by the massacre of citizens,* **Illae dissēnsiōnēs erant** *eius modī quae* (*ut*) **interneciōne cīvium dīiūdicātae sint.**

(*e*) *He was the only one who could not be persuaded,*

1. *Sōlus* / 2. *Ūnus* } *erat cuī* **persuādērī nōn posset.**

(*f*) *Who is there who does not love his country?* ***Quis est quī*** **patriam nōn amet** (*quīn* **patriam amet**) **?**

Other forms will be recognized by their general similarity to the above types.

The First Periphrastic Conjugation. As has been already noticed (Lesson XI), this combination of the future participle with forms of the verb **sum** is used instead of a simple future to denote intention, probability, and the like.

In the subjunctive, this construction will be found chiefly in the following cases:

(1) After negative expressions of doubt; as,

Nōn erat dubium quīn *victūrī essent*,
There was no doubt that they would (were going to) win.

(2) In indirect questions; as,

Interrogāvī quid *factūrus essēs*,
I asked what you { *were going to do*, *would do*, *intended to do*, etc.

(3) In subordinate clauses in indirect discourse; as,

Crēdō praemium quod dux mīlitī *datūrus sit* magnum esse,
I believe that the reward which the general will give the soldier is a large one.

In substantive clauses of fear, clauses of purpose, and most other subjunctive constructions, the fact that the subjunctive expresses an act as *willed* or *intended* is enough, with the aid of the context, to express futurity without the aid of this construction. The first periphrastic is, therefore, an "emergency" construction, only to be used when the meaning would not otherwise be clear.

EXERCISE XVI

1. There is no doubt that he will not go with me. 2. I have already refused this, and I shall certainly always refuse to try to prevent those from returning home who do not wish to advance with us. 3. In fact there are those who still believe that Catiline hates Manlius and is hated by him. 4. No one could hinder them from confessing all that had been both done and said at Laeca's house. 5. The consul said, "There is no one who doubts that with your guilty conscience you know that these things are true." 6. Said he, "I was the only one who could not

be persuaded to give (dīcō) evidence. 7. "Who," said he, "is there to whom the sight of the city, the possession of liberty, [and] finally life itself is not only not highly prized (dear), but also agreeable and charming?" 8. There ought to be no one who would not hesitate to do harm to his native land. 9. He is [a] suitable [person] on whom to bestow this most important (so great) office (on whom this . . . may be bestowed). 10. I cannot be discouraged from bringing aid to those who are in difficulties in the line of battle. 11. I have nothing to reply (rel. clause of char.) to those who say that they are not troubled by their faults. 12. There is no reason why you should say this so many times; I do not doubt that he can feign and dissemble everything. 13. The consul did not doubt that it was more important (greater) to make sure that the absent should have somewhere (quō) to return to [as] victors than to open provinces to us. 14. Who doubts that those disagreements were such that they did not contemplate the destruction of the commonwealth? 15. He objected strongly to revealing to the gladiators what he had overheard. 16. Who is so reckless, so insane, as not to desire to hinder those from escaping who, relying on the protection of that scoundrel, have dared to disagree with this view?

CONNECTED PROSE

In a speech which he delivered before the Quirites the consul impressed upon (showed) them that they must in no way doubt that their wives, their children, their dwellings, and their temples could all be rendered safe. And yet he did not deny that there were certain [individuals] who desired to hinder him by every [possible] means from averting this great (this so great) danger from the citizens.

LESSON XVII

EXPRESSIONS OF CAUSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH QUOD

1. ***Cum* Causal:** G. 586. A. 549. B. 286. 2. H. 598. HB. 525; 526. Bn. 892.

2. ***Quod, Quia*, and *Quoniam*:** G. 540–542; 525. 1–3; 610. A. 540. 1, 2, Notes; 572. a, b. B. 286. 1, b, c; 299 complete; 331. V, a. H. 588. I, II, 2, 3, Note, 4. HB. 552. 1, 2; 555. Bn. 822; 823; 886–888.

3. **Relative Clauses of Cause:** G. 633. A. 535. e. B. 283. 3, a). H. 592. HB. 523. Bn. 807.

HINTS

With **cum** causal, the reason is regarded as being the circumstances under which the main action occurs; with **quia** and **quod** causal, the reason is given simply as a fact; with **quoniam**, its truth is assumed to be admitted by the person addressed.

The relative causal clause is really a form of the clause of characteristic. Thus, in the sentence,

O fortūnāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēnerīs,

O happy youth, { *to have found* / *since you have found* } *a Homer as the herald of your prowess,*

quī invēneris means literally "as being one who," etc. The reason is implied rather than stated.

EXERCISE XVII

1. Because they cannot see the danger with their eyes, they pretend, forsooth, that we ought to keep silent, for-fear-that (lest) that incorrigible should be angry! 2. They pretend that they have kept still so long because they

feared assassination [at the hands] of Catiline. 3. What I purpose, that I perform; not because this is easy, but since only in this way do I feel that I am worthy to be called a man. 4. I am not afraid of him, because, as (what) I have always wished, a wall stands between me and him. 5. Since, as you know, I was not present at these deliberations, I cannot help asking you what was said there. 6. I ought to be especially glad of this — not that I seem to myself to be possessed of great talent, but that such a case has been presented to me that in it (in which) words (a speech) can fail no one. 7. It was quickly Archias' good fortune to outstrip all [competitors] in the reputation for (a) talent; there was the additional circumstance that many showed him attentions who were more anxious to be considered wise than to be wise. 8. Since that king has now been reigning for twenty years (is now reigning for the twentieth year) who assigned so many of the citizens to his soldiers to butcher, why do we not get that thoroughgoing scoundrel (most wicked [man]) out of the way, in defense of our altars and hearths, our wives and children, our dwellings and our temples? 9. He is violently enraged (angry) because of Catiline's madness in hoping (because he hopes) to be king of Italy. 10. Since you yourself will not (are unwilling to) read what is written on the tablets, I must needs read them to you, that you may the more easily understand how you are hated by all good men. 11. Because that person (**iste**) lives — nay, even comes into the senate — how, pray, do you think we should feel (it should be borne by us)? 12. On account of the glare (light) of the conflagration, which could be seen from a distance, he was afraid that he had brought aid to his comrades too late. 13. Inasmuch as he can often be seen within the walls and even in the senate, there is danger

that (lest) some may not be able to understand how, since these things are so, he can be an enemy. 14. Such being the case, hear what opinion the leaders of the senate, the most august and influential deliberative-body in (of) the whole world, have formed of (about) him. 15. They assure us (dat.) that his crimes are neither unknown nor few (not many), wherefore he must be resisted by every [possible] means.

CONNECTED PROSE

Then you *were* at Laeca's on that night, Catiline! There is the additional circumstance that on many previous occasions (many times before) you have plotted against the consul's life. Such being the case, I advise you to [make your] escape at once; not because I fear you, but because I do not wish even you to be killed.

LESSON XVIII

CONCESSIVE (ADVERSATIVE) CLAUSES

1. **Indicative Alone**: G. 605. A. 527. d, Note. B. 309. 2. H. 586. I. HB. 554; 556. Bn. 894.

2. **Subjunctive Alone**: G. 587; 606–608. A. 549; 527. a, b. B. 309. 1, 3, 4. H. 586. II; 598. HB. 526 and a; 532. 2, a, b. Bn. 898; 900.

3. **Indicative or Subjunctive**: G. 604. A. 527. c. B. 309. 2. H. 585. HB. 582. 8. Bn. 897.

4. **Relative Clauses of Concession**: G. 634. A. 535. e. B. 283. 3, b). H. 593. 2. HB. 523. Bn. 807.

HINTS

Choice of a Conjunction.

(*a*) With the indicative.

Quamquam means *in spite of the fact that* . . .

(*b*) With the subjunctive.

Quamvīs means *however much the assumption be true that . . .*
Licet means *granting that . . .*

(*c*) Indicative or subjunctive.

Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi may be used where the "although" really means "even if."

Do not use **quamquam** if the "although" clause states something merely assumed, as "Let justice be done, *though the heavens fall.*"

***Cum* Concessive.** As **cum** temporal, when followed by the subjunctive, gives the circumstances which incidentally mark the *time* of an action, and **cum** causal the circumstances which are the *cause* of an action, so **cum** concessive (adversative) gives circumstances *in spite of which* the action occurs. The context alone determines which meaning **cum** shall receive. Similarly in English, the temporal conjunction *when* can take on both causal and concessive meanings. Thus,

(Temporal) *When I was asked to come, I could not refuse.*
(Causal) *I could not refuse, when they seemed so anxious that I should come.* (When = since; *because of the circumstance that.*)
(Adversative) *I stayed at home, when I ought to have gone out.* (When = although; *in spite of the circumstance that.*)

EXERCISE XVIII

1. Although Catiline had predicted that the consul would be killed in the Campus [Martius], he could not keep many [people] from warning him of (dē) this (so) great danger. 2. However much Manlius' camp felt the need of him as general, Catiline did not dare to leave (set out from) the city. 3. Granted that this (pl.) is true, I

must not raise a disturbance by my official act (in the name of the state). 4. Albeit we are willing to keep silent about the death of his former wife, we cannot help saying a great deal (**multa**) about the crimes which were committed (done) after that. 5. Even if he has provided firebrands for setting the city on fire, he has succeeded-in nothing which he hoped to be able[1] to do. 6. Then Cethegus, although (**quī**) a little while before he had made some answer (replied something) about the crimes of Catiline, denied that he had ever heard anything about this matter. 7. Notwithstanding that he came to [take part in] the naval war, nevertheless all the onslaughts of Mithridates were checked at his coming. 8. Notwithstanding they had fought (used) successful battles, nevertheless they missed their friends sorely (greatly). 9. Although I have tried by every means [in my power] to check the attacks of-the-people, nevertheless I am afraid that I cannot hinder the plebs from providing firebrands for setting the city on fire. 10. However many may have promised (subj.) to die in Caesar's behalf, there is no doubt that the same [persons] would prefer to live with Pompey. 11. Granted that this evil has existed for many years, what reason is there why we should suffer it to exist longer? 12. Although the men of Chios are said to have claimed Homer as their own, they could not help many others' insisting that he belonged to them (was theirs). 13. Although Caesar was unable to avenge this villainy, yet he asserted that he recoiled from [the thought of] so great a crime. 14. Although the air (breath) of heaven can in no way be delightful to him, perhaps he is waiting-to-see if his other accomplices in (of) crime are

[1] The pres. inf. of **possum** is used here, instead of the future usual in the case of other verbs.

detected (subj.) by the senate. 15. Although he does not know who is responsible for (has done) this (so) great villainy, he surely knows well by what means it was done.

CONNECTED PROSE

Quirites, though many (and) great men enjoying the highest (**amplus**) honors at your hands (your highest honors) hope that you will not place Pompey in command of this (so) great war, yet you can of yourselves determine what is best to do (supine). For often before, as you remember, you have made it possible for all to see (brought it to pass that all could see) that you had more political insight (saw more in politics) than the-other-side [did].

LESSON XIX

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

1. ***Cum* Temporal**: G. 579 complete; 580; 581; 584; 585; 588; 242 and Remarks. A. 545. Note 1, a; 546. Notes 1–3, a; 547. B. 288. 1–3; 289 and a; 290. 1, 2. H. 597; 600. I, 1, II, 1; 601. 1, 2, 4. HB. 521. 1, b, c; 524; 540 and a; 550 and a. Bn. 856–861.

2. ***Ubi; Postquam; Simul atque*, etc.**: G. 561. A. 543 and a. B. 287. 1–3. H. 602. 1, 2. HB. 550; 557 and a. Bn. 870; 871.

HINTS

***Cum* Temporal.** The indicative with **cum** is chiefly used for the purpose of emphasizing the fact that two actions occurred at identically the same time. Both verbs are then in the same tense. When the important idea is, not that the actions were simultaneous, but that the situation described in the **cum**-clause formed the *circumstances* under which the action of the main clause occurred, then (of past events) we shall have **cum** with the imperfect or pluperfect

subjunctive; and to this class belong the majority of the temporal **cum**-clauses which one is likely to use.

Future Time. **Cum**, like **sī**, when referring to the future, takes a future or future perfect indicative, where English prefers the present or perfect. Thus,

(*a*) *When you are* **away**, *I shall not forget you*,

Cum aberis, tuī nōn oblīviscar.

(*b*) *When Caesar* **has conquered** *the Gauls, let him* (*then*) *celebrate a triumph.*

Caesar cum Gallōs *superāverit* tum triumphet.

EXERCISE XIX

1. When he had gone (**proficīscor**) to Sicily, and when he was returning from that province, he came to Heraclia. 2. At the time (then) when I was driving him from the city, I foresaw this in (with) my mind. 3. When you consider, Quirites, how much courage he possesses (there is in him), how much refinement, how much integrity, then you will more easily be able to understand why all the allies have desired and demanded him for this most dangerous war. 4. The conspirators had not yet left the house of Marcus Brutus when the consul was informed of all their plans. 5. After he had read the books, he said, "the man (**is**) who can write such [things] should be accounted worthy of the greatest praise." 6. As soon as we arrived at the Forum, we were surprised that so many citizens had gathered at (to) the same place. 7. The moment he caught sight of Catiline, the consul said, "Oh, the difficult problem (wretched condition) of saving the commonwealth!" 8. On hearing (as he heard) this word, Catiline said that no one would venture (dared) to say that he had ever attempted to harm his native land. 9. As soon as I was able, I came here to

ask your mercy (mercy from you) for (gen.) my many great crimes. 10. As soon as ever Archias grew out of boyhood (went forth from the boys), he devoted himself to the pursuit of writing. 11. On the one hand, he realized that this was being done in accordance with the man's (is) deserts, and on the other, he thought that it was greatly to the advantage of the state for the influence of Indutiomarus to be as strong as possible among his own [people]. 12. After those (iste) [persons] realized that his life was most carefully (with the highest carefulness) guarded, they formed another plan, full of criminal daring (crime and daring). 13. He said that after they realized that they were given no opportunity of committing (doing) a murder, they had formed another (and) more daring plan. 14. Then, as soon as Catiline saw that they had come together, although he had frequently had many discussions (discussed many [things]) with them individually (one at a time), yet he made a speech like this (of this kind). 15. Although the facts were plain and open, there were [some] who pretended to think that this criminal had been unjustly brought to trial. 16. Whenever he sees me, he tells me what he has been doing. 17. Whenever the citizens saw Catiline, they wondered whether he would leave Rome.

CONNECTED PROSE: A ROMAN LETTER

Cicero sends greeting to his Terentia. If you are well, I am glad (**bene est**). I am well.[1] Although I have[2] nothing to write (which I may write) to you about myself,

[1] Often abbreviated in Latin "S. V. B. E. E. V." See vocabulary under the several words used.

[2] In letters, the writer often puts himself mentally in the attitude of the recipient, and so uses past tenses of present events which will be past when the letter arrives. These are called epistolary tenses.

yet after I had heard that you were worried by reports emanating-from (of) those who said that I would be driven into exile, it seemed that I ought to inform you as soon as possible that there was no truth (nothing of true) in those rumors, and that no one would dare to hinder me from returning home as soon as I had completed the-arrangements (ea) which had to be made about my consulship. Be sure to take care of your health. Good-bye.

LESSON XX

TEMPORAL CLAUSES — *Continued*

1. *Antequam* and *Priusquam:* G. 574–577. A. 550; 551. c. B. 291; 292. H. 605. I, II, 1. HB. 507. 4, a)–d); 571; 550. b. Bn. 862–866.
2. *Dum* and *Quoad:* G. 568–572. A. 552–556. B. 293. I–III. H. 603; 604. HB. 507. 5; 571; 550. b; 559; 560. Bn. 876; 878; 881; 884.

HINTS

With **antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, and **dum** and **quoad**, *until*, the mood to be employed is subjunctive or indicative according as the act described is conceived as anticipated, or as merely occurring. Thus,

Caesar captured the spies before they could get away,

means that he anticipated their escape, and succeeded in preventing it. Therefore we have the subjunctive:

Caesar speculātōrēs comprehendit priusquam effugere *possent*.

But in the sentence

I had learned this fact before I reached home,

we have a mere succession of events: the time of the occurrence is the important detail. Therefore the indicative is used:

Hanc rem cōgnōveram priusquam domum pervēnī.

In practice this rule is not quite consistently carried out. Observe particularly the statements of the grammar about

dum, and for **antequam** and **priusquam** use the following table, as covering most cases:[1]

Present

1. With affirmative leading clause, **priusquam** with pres. subj.
2. With negative leading clause, **priusquam** with perf. ind. (Such sentences usually denote customary or repeated action.)

Past

3. With affirmative leading clause, **priusquam** with imperf. subj. or perf. indic.
4. With negative leading clause, **priusquam** with perf. indic. But to express *design* the imperf. subj. may be used.

Future

5. With affirmative leading clause, **priusquam** with pres. indic. (but if the leading verb is an imperative, use **priusquam** with pres. subj.).
6. With negative leading clause, **priusquam** with fut. perf. indic.

Until. Note that after a *negative* leading clause, if *before* may be substituted for the *until* without altering the meaning, **priusquam** and not **dum** must be used. Thus,

And they did not stay their flight until (= *before*) *they reached the Rhine,*

Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt.

Before and After. The sentence

He returned four years { *after* (adv.), *afterwards*

may be expressed as follows:

(*a*) **Quattuor post** ***annīs*** }
(*b*) **Quattuor** ***annīs*** **post** } **revertit.**
(*c*) **Post quattuor** ***annōs*** }

[1] Abridged from Professor Hullihen's article in the CLASSICAL WEEKLY, Vol. IV, No. 26.

If *after* be the conjunction, we may have these forms and two others in addition. Thus,

He returned four years after he had set out,

(*a*) Quattuor post *annīs*
(*b*) Quattuor *annīs* post
(*c*) Post quattuor *annōs* } revertit quam profectus est.
(*d*) Post *quārtum annum*
(*e*) *Quārtō annō* post

The same principles apply also to **antequam** and **priusquam.**

EXERCISE XX

1. Before I come to the point where I shall call for your vote (recur to the vote), I will say a few [words] about myself. 2. It is our desire (pleases us) that the letter be opened (inf.) by you before you lay it before the senate. 3. That it might be possible for a delay to occur (that space might be able to intervene) until the soldiers for whom he had made requisition should assemble, he replied to the envoys that he would take time to think the matter over (for deliberating). 4. While this (pl.) was going on, it was reported to Caesar that the horsemen were drawing nearer to the hillock. 5. While we live (are alive), let us live! 6. As long as the consul shall live he will be able to defend those [measures] which you decide on (fut. perf.), and to execute them by himself. 7. Catiline would not have proclaimed (plup. subj.) the republic's day of destruction and doom so long in advance. 8. Four days before he was brought to trial, it is said that he promised a certain slave to give him his liberty. 9. Five years later (after), he returned to Rome. 10. Five years after his return (he returned) to Rome, he was forced to [make his] escape a second time, because certain crimes,

committed many years before, had been reported to the senate. 11. A few days after Caesar reached there, he demanded hostages and all their weapons. 12. They will not stop retreating until they reach the Rhine. 13. As long as there were others to defend your cause, I thought that all my time ought to be devoted to the demands (times) of my friends. 14. They did not let the leaders go from the meeting until they agreed (it had been yielded by them) to their taking arms and pressing on (**contendō**) to the camp (that they should take, etc.). 15. Forty-nine days after leaving Brundisium (on the forty-ninth day after he set out from, etc.), he annexed the whole of Cilicia to the domain of the Roman people.

CONNECTED PROSE

Of (**ex**) all these [men], Catiline was alone to be feared, but [only] for such time as he was found (contained) within the walls of the city. For after he left the city, even before he reached Manlius' camp, we perceived that as it were a mass-of-corruption (cesspool), great and perilous to the state, had been removed (drawn out).

LESSON XXI

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

1. **Protasis and Apodosis (Condition and Conclusion):** G. 589–592; 496. 1, 2. A. 512. a, c; 525. a, c. B. 301; 306. 1–4. H. 572; 575. 1–6. HB. 573; 574; 577; 578. 1–3. Bn. 907–910.

2. **Indicative in Conditional Sentences:** G. 595; 242. Remarks 1, 2. A. 515; 516. 1, a, c, d. B. 302. 1, 3, 4; 261. 1. HB. 575. *A*; 579, a. Bn. 911; 914.

3. **Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences:** G. 596 and 1; 597. A. 514. B, 2, a, b, C, 1, 2. B. 303; 304. H. 576; 577; 579. HB. 580, a; 581. Bn. 915; 917; 919–921.

HINTS

In turning a conditional sentence into Latin, we should first make sure whether the supposition is in present, past, or future time. To do this, one must observe *both* condition (protasis) and conclusion (apodosis), because in English the tense of the verb does not always show the time of the sentence. For instance, the protasis "*If I saw*" can refer to present, past, or future suppositions. Thus:

(1) *If I saw him* (yesterday), *I did not* (then) *recognize him.* (Past time.)

(2) *If I saw him* (at this moment), *I should not* (now) *be looking for him.* (Present time.)

(3) *If I saw him* (to-morrow), *I should probably not recognize him* (then). (Future time.)

Notice that in each case the form of the conclusion makes the time of the whole sentence clear, even if the words "yesterday," "to-morrow," etc., are omitted.

By adding the words "now," "previously," or "subsequently," to a conditional sentence, and observing which one seems to fit, it is often possible to determine the time of the sentence more readily than by other means. Thus, in the sentence,

If you understood this, I should not be explaining it,

the full thought is clearly,

If you understood this now, *I should not* now *be explaining it.*

Having determined the time, the next step is to find whether one must use the indicative or the subjunctive. This may be done by attention to the formulas here presented.

I. Present Conditions

(*a*) *If this is so, it is fortunate.* (Nothing assumed: takes pres. indic.)

(*b*) *If this were so* (which it is not), *it would be fortunate.* (Supposition assumed to be untrue: takes imperf. subj.)

II. Past Conditions

(*a*) *If this was so, it was fortunate.* (Nothing assumed: takes imperf. or perf. indic.)

(*b*) *If this had been so* (which it was not), *it would have been fortunate.* (Supposition assumed to be untrue: takes pluperf. subj.)

III. Future Conditions

(*a*) *If he* (actually) *comes, all will be glad to see him.* (Assumes the future event as a reality: takes fut. or fut. perf. indic.)

(*b*) *If he should* (by any chance) *come, all would be glad to see him.* (Assumes the future event as a more remote possibility: takes pres. or perf. subj.)

Finally, notice how, in the protasis of a future condition, English is apt to use a present tense where Latin employs a future or a future perfect. Thus, English says,

If Caesar **conquers,** *he will spare the captives;*

but Latin would make the protasis,

If Caesar **shall** *conquer* or
If Caesar **shall have** *conquered,*
Caesar sī ***superābit*** or ***superāverit,*** **captīvīs parcet** or **pepercerit.**

EXERCISE XXI

1. If Catiline is standing in the Comitium armed (with a weapon), why does not the consul have him arrested? 2. If he passes over this, [namely] how many times that [man] has tried to kill him when consul, there is no doubt that it will be [the act] of a wise [man]. 3. If, as Cicero says (āiō), Catiline has accomplished nothing, why has he notwithstanding (nevertheless) never ceased to attempt and to

wish? 4. If the sword had not fallen from his hand, would he not have tried to kill the consul? 5. If the city should be bare of defenders (a garrison), we should easily gain possession of it; but if, as you say, there are many to defend it, there will be need both of strategy [on the part of] the general and courage [on the part] of the soldiers. 6. If the Roman people were gentle to (**in**) its enemies, would not foreign nations dare many things which they now hesitate to do? 7. Whether, as he said, he thought that he must not be afraid of being too careful (too much carefulness must not be feared), or whether there was some other reason for [his] refusal (gen. of ger.), there is no doubt that he acted wisely. 8. Unless you surrender yourselves and all your [possessions] to us, you will lose not only your liberty, but even your lives (sing.). 9. If, according to his custom, he had asked the senators their opinion before he made his speech, no one could have accused him of betraying his country. 10. If you had said the same things as (which) the consul [did], you would have had to go into exile. 11. Unless you give me as many hostages as I have demanded, you will all be led into slavery. 12. Had you not given me such honor as no one within human recollection has attained, I should have no answer to make you (should not have what I might reply to you). 13. If the consul had been afraid of being too careful (too much diligence), we should not be safe now. 14. If you believe me, do not hinder this incorrigible from being punished by the state. 15. For if the commonwealth had punished him many years sooner (**ante**), so many great (so many and so great) dangers would not be threatening it now.

CONNECTED PROSE

You have asked me, friends, if I thought that this [man] should be punished. But I have no answer to make (see Sentence 12), for if he (iste) should be visited with punishment, there is no doubt that many would say that it was an act of cruel arrogance on the part of the consul (had been done cruelly and arrogantly by the consul); but if I should adopt some milder method (should do something milder), I am afraid that at-some-time every one would think that the government had been administered by me with scant fidelity (too little diligently).

LESSON XXII

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. CLAUSES OF PROVISO. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

1. **Optative Subjunctive**: G. 260; 261. A. 441; 442. B. 279. 1, 2. H. 558. 1, 2. HB. 510. a; 511. 1. Bn. 773.

2. **Clauses of Proviso**: G. 573. A. 528. B. 310. I, II. H. 587. HB. 529. Bn. 929.

3. **Conditional Clauses of Comparison**: G. 602. A. 524. B. 307. 1, 2. H. 584. 1–4. HB. 504. 3, a. Bn. 928.

HINTS

Optative Subjunctive. Notice that the tenses refer to the same time as in conditional sentences taking the subjunctive; the present subjunctive referring to future time, the imperfect to present time, and the pluperfect to past time.

Conditional Clauses of Comparison. Notice especially that while these apparently resemble contrary to fact conditions, the tense-use is different; the present referring to present time and the imperfect to past time.

EXERCISE XXII

1. He says that he is innocent, as if we did not know how often he has refused to obey the laws. 2. The consul will be freed from great apprehension (fear), if only there is a wall between him and Catiline. 3. They feared the cruelty of the absent Ariovistus as if he were present. 4. He did not dread any one's ill-will, provided that through his efforts dignity and safety were secured for the Roman people. 5. May that band not have more power than the [combined] majesty of the republic and yourselves. 6. Would that he had taken their life from the villains! 7. If only you understood how greatly you are mistaken (follow sequence) when you say that I have harmed the commonwealth! 8. If only Jupiter help us, in three days we shall reach Italy. 9. If he should not stand by you, how would you accomplish that which you hope to do? 10. O that you believed me as (in what manner) I believe you! 11. If I did not believe you, I could not help hating you. 12. May it not happen that one (is) who has saved his country, rendered services to (served) the citizens, appeased the enemy [and] pleased all patriots, should be forced by profligate men to go into exile. 13. Would that you felt more grateful (had greater gratitude) to a man (is) who has never failed his country! 14. As long as you thank me, there is nothing I will not gladly do for you.[1]

CONNECTED PROSE

Would that you had such an abundance of brave and upright men, Quirites, that it was easy to put some one in charge of so great an enterprise (rēs) and so important a war! As-it-is, however, since Pompey is the only one who

[1] The relative must not be omitted in Latin.

possesses all the highest qualifications (in whom are all the highest [things]), why do we hesitate to appoint him commander immediately, provided this can be done with the consent of the senators?

LESSON XXIII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse. (*a*) **The Apodosis**: G. 656, 2; 657–659. A. 589. 2, a, 1–3, b, 2–4, Note 1. B. 319. A; 320. A; 321. A. H. 646. 1, 2; 647. 1–3. HB. 534. 1, b; 581. b, 1. Bn. 979–982. (*b*) **The Protasis**: G. 595. Remark 1; 597. Remark 4; 656. 1, 3; 510. B. 589, 1, b, 1; 483; 485. g. B. 319. B, a; 320. B; 321. B; 267; 268. 4. H. 646; 647; 544; 545. HB. 534. 2, II; 536; 581. b, Note; 477. a. Bn. (same references as for Protasis).

HINTS

The Protasis. No new principle is involved. In writing the protasis of a conditional sentence in indirect discourse, notice whether the verb describes completed or incomplete action. If it describes completed action, it must be put in the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive, according to the sequence. If it describes incomplete action, use the present or imperfect subjunctive, according to the sequence. Remember that in these clauses the tense of the subjunctive does *not* indicate the *time when* the act occurs, but only whether it is conceived as *completed* or *continuing* at the time indicated in the apodosis. Thus, a future perfect indicative in protasis of the direct discourse would in indirect discourse become a perfect subjunctive if the sequence were primary, a pluperfect if the sequence were secondary.

The Apodosis. Here also no new principle is involved: the tense of the infinitive indicates the time of the original

verb — present for present conditions, perfect for past, and future for future.

Contrary to Fact (Unreal) Conditions. The above rules are modified in the case of conditions contrary to fact, as noted in the references to the grammars.

EXERCISE XXIII

1. If you ask-my-advice, I recommend this to you. (*a*) The consul says that if he asks-his-advice, he recommends this to him. (*b*) He said that if he asked his advice, he recommended this to him. 2. If this happened to no one, it was surprising. (*a*) I think that if this happened, etc. (*b*) I thought, etc. 3. If I order you to be arrested forthwith (**iam**), I shall do right (adv.). (*a*) I believe, etc. (*b*) I believed, etc. 4. If your country should speak (talk) thus (**haec**) with you, she would deserve to gain her request. (*a*) He answers, etc. (*b*) He answered, etc. 5. If I could accomplish this by a [mere] word, I should be forcing out those very men. (*a*) He says, etc. (*b*) He said, etc. 6. If they had been willing to do this earlier, we should find (use) them better citizens. (*a*) We know, etc. (*b*) Did we not know, etc.? 7. He asserted that they were very much mistaken, if they expected that that original leniency of his would last forever (be permanent). 8. We understood that if Cicero had changed his opinion, some would have thought him extremely cruel (superl.). 9. It was said to him that if he wished to render a service to (serve) the consul's reputation (praise), he should go into exile. 10. He replied that if those things which had been reported to him had not been discovered, yet he did not think that too much carefulness was to be feared. 11. In this letter (abl. of means) he wrote me that unless I had resisted the

infamous designs of the conspirators, the commonwealth would have perished. 12. I knew that if I did not make war on this nation, it would make war on the Roman people unprovoked (of-its-own-accord). 13. He knew that unless war had been made on them by him, war would have been made on him by them. 14. I say that unless many honors had been taken from him, he would not have become an enemy to the commonwealth. 15. He was informed that if he did not get to (reach) the river before the enemy had crossed, they would all escape.

CONNECTED PROSE

The consul said that if he should say that [it was] he [who] had resisted Catiline and his accomplices, he should be presumptuous (should take too much to himself) and intolerable (not to be borne); but that they must feel grateful to Jupiter, for unless he had robbed the enemy of their senses (by whom unless good-sense had been taken from the enemy), in no way could this (so) great peril have been averted from the country.

LESSON XXIV

PARTICIPLES. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. **Tense of the Participle**: G. 276; 282. Remark; 283. A. 158. a, b, c, 1, 2, Note; 491. B. 336. 1–5; 337. 4. H. 640 complete. HB. 599. a–c; 600. 1, 4. Bn. 984–988.

2. **Ablative Absolute**: G. 409; 410. Remarks. A. 419 and a; 489; 492; 493. 1, 2. B. 227. 1, 4. H. 489. 1, 3, 5. HB. 421 complete. Bn. 558.

3. **Participles Equivalent to Clauses**: G. 664. Remark 1; 665–667. A. 496; 497. B. 227. 2, a)–f). H. 638. 1, 2. HB. 604. 1–7. Bn. 559–565; 991; 994.

HINTS

Tense of the Participle. In the English sentence

Laelius, returning to Rome, learned that his house had burned down,

the present participle *returning* may mean that the news came to him either while returning or after returning.

Latin is more precise. If we mean *while* returning, we must use the present participle. Thus,

Laelius, Rōmam *revertēns*, domum suam dēflagrāsse certior factus est.

If, however, we mean *after* returning, the perfect participle must be used. Thus,

Laelius, Rōmam *reversus*, etc.

The Ablative Absolute. The verb **revertor** being deponent, the perfect participle **reversus** has an active meaning, *having returned*, and therefore naturally agrees with **Laelius**. Suppose, however, we had wished to turn into Latin the sentence

Caesar, having received the hostages, withdrew his troops.

Since Latin has no perfect *active* participle, except in the case of deponent verbs, we cannot translate *having received* literally. We must therefore change the participial clause to the passive. Thus,

Caesar, hostages having been received, withdrew his troops.

Translating the nominative absolute of the English by the Latin ablative absolute, we have

Caesar *obsidibus acceptīs* cōpiās dēdūxit.

From this it appears that the ablative absolute construction is in part a makeshift, enabling one to employ a participle in the *tense* desired, even when it cannot agree with the subject or object of the main verb.

The converse is also true, that we must never use the ablative absolute when the word with which the participle agrees, or a pronoun representing this word, can at the same time be the subject or object of the leading verb. Thus, if we have

Caesar, having withdrawn his troops, halted them on a hill,

we must recast the sentence in the form

Caesar halted his **withdrawn** *troops on a hill,*

Caesar cōpiās *dēductas* in colle cōnstituit.

Had we used the ablative absolute,

Caesar cōpiīs dēductīs *eōs* in colle cōnstituit,

it would have meant

Caesar, having withdrawn his troops, halted **them** (*i.e.* not the troops, but some *other* persons of whom mention had just been made) *on a hill.*

To summarize directions, in translating English participles into Latin, first be sure of the precise TIME indicated by the participle (either at the same time as the main verb or before it), then be sure that the Latin participle agrees with the proper word. A rigid, literal re-rendering of your Latin will be the surest test.

EXERCISE XXIV

1. After worshipping Jupiter, Quirites, depart to your homes. 2. He asked whether they ought to endure Catiline, *when-he-desired*[1] to devastate the world with massacre and fire (burnings). 3. I hope we shall reach our journey's end in safety (safe), *with none to hinder* [us]. 4. I am not going to state what great deeds he did in other provinces, *after the completion of this war.* 5. *When*

[1] In this exercise, participial expressions are italicized when this construction would not readily be suggested by the form of the English.

matters in Italy *had been settled* in this way (so), he left for Sicily to conduct the war there. 6. Leaving for Sicily, after he had returned from Africa, he crushed all the pirates who were there (all who were pirates there) by force of (and) arms. 7. As he was returning (to whom going back) to Rome, tidings were (sing.) brought to him that his life was being sought by some who desired a revolution. 8. Thinking that these should be resisted in all possible ways (**ratiō**), he took pains to have as strong (large) a guard as possible about (with) him. 9. On learning of their opinion, he replied to [those]-who begged (pres. part.) that he should give orders (order) that Catiline be arrested at once, that he could not do this *when so many citizens were resisting* [such action]. 10. If your parents feared you, should you not, on learning of this fact, think that you must leave the city? 11. These all fell fighting bravely. 12. The soldiers, having followed them too far, came to a dangerous spot (**locus aliēnus**); when the lieutenant, fearing that he should be unable to lead his troops back in safety (unharmed), sent [men] to beg that reinforcements be sent him. 13. On his way back (when he was returning) to Italy, he was informed by a certain barbarian that a movement was on foot to cut him off (passive) from supplies. 14. Having a residence at Rome, he registered before the praetor Marcus Marcellus, his intimate friend.

CONNECTED PROSE

The general, after haranguing his [men], joined battle. *Since our men were thrown into disorder* by the first onslaught of the enemy, he sent the third legion as reinforcements to [those]-who-were-in-difficulties (see 10, above) in the line of battle, whereupon (**quō**) it happened that the

enemy, fearing that they would be surrounded, took to flight, while our [men], pursuing them (for "while . . . them," say "whom") for many miles, *surrounded* three hundred of them with the cavalry [*and*] cut them to pieces. When this battle was fought (faciō), on learning of the enemy's purpose to cut him off from supplies, the general returned by the longest possible marches (as great marches as possible) to the place (thither) whence he had come the day before.

LESSON XXV

USE OF TĀLIS, ETC.

HINTS

The "Hints" to Lesson XXVII are also applicable here.

EXERCISE XXV

1. The character of every state depends upon (every state is such as is) either the nature or the will of its ruler (him who rules it). 2. He is such [a man] as I see you to be. 3. These [qualities] exist in him in the same degree in which they are lacking (are as great in him as they are not) in all other generals. 4. The consul incurred such impopularity [so great was the consul's unpopularity] on account of Catiline's execution (Catiline having been executed) as no one ever before, within human recollection, had incurred in saving the country (the country having been saved). 5. After killing as many Roman citizens as he could find in Asia [Minor], Mithridates declared war on us. 6. No one has desired as many and as great favors (rēs) from the immortal gods as

(how many and how great) the gods have bestowed upon you without your asking for them (voluntarily). 7. I wish the same thing as you: that through my efforts dignity and safety may be secured for the commonwealth. 8. This man is not so brave as [he is] wise: for he struggled hard (greatly) that he might always please the one (is) who had the greatest power. 9. The more he wished to attack them when-off-their-guard, the less he seemed to accomplish it. 10. You have not written me as often as I had hoped you would (write). 11. As often as (how often)[1] you have attacked me, I have escaped you by-my-own-efforts (through myself). 12. I will give you as much money as (how much of money)[1] I have with me. 13. In this war, such a war as (what sort of war)[1] was never before waged within human recollection, I hope so to conduct myself that you all, Quirites, may understand that what I do, I do for my country. 14. I will write you as many letters as I shall be days at Rome. 15. Who ever thought that you had done as much as you could was very much mistaken.

CONNECTED PROSE

Now, Quirites, observe both what this war is like, and how important it is (of what sort and how great this war is). But it is not so important that it should be feared, for as often as our general has come into conflict with the enemy, he has led back his army victorious. Now, however, it will be more dangerous for us to wage war (with greater danger shall we wage war); for the new king is as wise as [he is] brave, and he will not fight in the same way as did his predecessor on the throne (he who reigned before him).

[1] These shortened expressions are common.

LESSON XXVI

PRONOUNS

EXERCISE XXVI

1. Even if we ourselves could perceive these things neither by eyes nor ears nor any sense, yet we ought to believe that they exist, when we are told (**accipiō**) by the greatest and wisest men that this is so. 2. Whatever we perceive by the mind, all this springs from the senses. 3. Whatever (what) designs should be resisted, these I will resist in whatever way [I can]. 4. All the most learned men deny that the earth is flat. 5. You have never done anything worse than what (that which) you are now doing. 6. Has any state which was rich been brought to a state of peace and quietness (pacified)? 7. If any one does not know what cupidity men display when they start (with what cupidity men start) for their provinces, let him hear what is written in this letter. 8. To have the same tastes and antipathies (to wish and not wish the same thing), that and only that (**ea dēmum**) is lasting friendship. 9. Then and only then (**tum dēmum**) did they turn their thoughts to providing for their safety (did they provide with their minds for their safety) when with their eyes they saw the actual mischief. 10. Now the very stillness terrifies him whom once not any weapons [that were] hurled alarmed. 11. But now what does that life of yours amount to (what is, etc.), in defense of which you have committed so many infamous[1] crimes? 12. Let all the best men obey the laws. 13. Some one has said that those who desire a revolution do not have to obey the laws; but you and I,[2] (as) I imagine, consider that the advice of a wise [man] would be

[1] Latin says, "so many *and* so infamous." [2] Latin says, "I and you."

different. 14. He who forgets the instruction of a parent can in no wise be a good citizen. 15. A certain man asked the consul why, if all the citizens were agreed upon saving the state, it was necessary for them to protect their houses by guards and patrols [any] longer.

CONNECTED PROSE

Whoever of them hopes to be king or even consul is very much mistaken. For he has entirely forgotten that the Roman people will never suffer any one to be made king, so long as they shall remember (sing.: why?) Tarquinius Superbus.

LESSON XXVII

CORRELATIVES

HINTS

Translation of "as." In this Lesson notice particularly that the translation of the second *as* in "as many as," "as often as," etc., depends on the first part of the expression, **tam** being followed by **quam**, **tot** by **quot**, etc.

The case of a **quālis** or **quantus** will be the same as if a form of **quī** were to be used. Thus,

I have never seen such a man as he is said to be, **Numquam *tālem* hominem vīdī *quālis* ille esse dīcitur.**

Avoid putting such correlatives close together. Thus,

Pompey has won as often as Caesar would be **Totiēns Pompeius quotiēns Caesar vīcit**, *or* **Quotiēns Pompeius vīcit, totiēns Caesar**; *not* **Pompeius totiēns quotiēns**, *etc.*

EXERCISE XXVII

1. You will go in safety (safe) by the same way as you came here. 2. This man says that Sulla would not have refused him if he had asked citizenship of him. 3. [It

is] not so [much that] they are inactive as [that] they are afraid that if what they should say should be overheard, they would suffer (come into) the severest (**summus**) torture. 4. For the dearer life is to human beings, the more carefully they think it ought to be guarded by whatever means [they can]. 5. As often as you have cried that you were a good citizen, I have seen those laugh who believe that you cherish no design (meditate nothing) but (**nisi**) the ruin of your native land. 6. You, forsooth, think that those who hold supreme control should live differently from us, who are merely citizens. 7. Where you go, there I shall go; where you live, there also shall I live. 8. Let my remarks begin at the point (speech start thence) whence this whole case arises (is led). 9. Many men of many minds! (how many men, so many opinions). 10. He had a bridge built (made) over (**in**) the river, across which (where) he might lead his army. 11. And so he returned home in less than thirty days by the same route as it had taken him six months to pass over (he had marched in six months). 12. He made it possible for horses (there) to go where before one man could scarcely crawl (**rēpere**). 13. If our fellow-citizens are such as they ought to be, there will be no need of foreign assistance. 14. For this war is not as great as many which have been waged by our forefathers.

CONNECTED PROSE

Most honorable and excellent Roman knights[1] say that this war ought not to be carried on in the same way as (in which) the others [have been]; for, [they say] the character of the enemy is different, and it is necessary

[1] Latin does not say "the brave Pompey," but "Pompey, a brave man"; not **Pompeius fortis**, but **Pompeius, vir fortis** (or **fortissimus**). Apply this principle here.

to go (set out) to-a-different-place from [that to which] our armies marched before; but that if we were going to start for the same place where we have engaged with the enemy so many times already, we should be undertaking this war with equanimity.

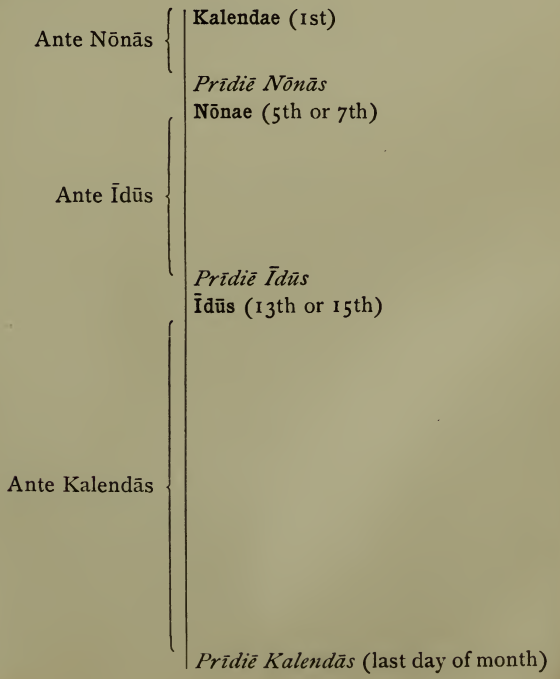
LESSON XXVIII

DATES

G. Appendix 1. A. 630; 631. B. 371; 372. H. 754–756. HB. 660–671. Bn. 603; 604.

HINTS

Dates. The following diagram illustrates the divisions of the Roman month:



"In March, July, October, May,
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,
The Nones the seventh; but all besides
Have two days less for Nones and Ides."

The YEAR may be expressed by giving, in ordinal numerals, the year since the Founding of the City of Rome (A.U.C. = **annō urbis conditae** or **ab urbe conditā**).

(1) For dates B.C., subtract the given date from 754. Thus,

44 B.C. = 754 − 44 = 710 A.U.C.

(2) For dates A.D., add the given date to 753. Thus,

1903 A.D. = 753 + 1903 = 2656 A.U.C.

According to the above rule, the sentence

America was discovered in 1492 A.D.

becomes

America inventa est annō urbis conditae bis mīllēsimō ducentēsimō quadrāgēsimō quīntō.

EXERCISE XXVIII

1. January 1. February 2. March 3. April 4. May 5. June 6. July 7. 2. From August 8 to September 9. October 30. November 30. December 29. 3. From January 12 to February 14. 4. Three days after March 15. 5. Two days before April 13. 6. About the first of June, in the consulship of Lucius Caesar and Gaius Figulus, he at first began to instigate some and to sound others. 7. Remember the Ides of March, Quirites, when Gaius Caesar died. 8. Nine years after we came to Spain, we were informed that unless we returned to Rome immediately, we must lose our lives (perish). 9. Eight months before he was elected consul, he said that he never (denied that he ever) hoped to enter upon that office (magistracy). 10. After a few days one of the senators (a

certain senator) read in the senate a letter which he said had been brought to him from Faesulae, in which it was written that Gaius Manlius had taken [up] arms on October 28. 11. The American republic (**cīvitās Americāna**) was born (founded) July 4, 1776 A.D. 12. George Washington, who was the first president of the American people, was born February 22. 13. Abraham Lincoln, who was born February 12, strove with all his might that government of the people, by the people, for the people, should not perish from the earth (lest that power (**imperium**) which had its source in (arose from) the people, which was administered both by the people and for (**prō**) the people, should ever perish in the world). 14. Fourscore and seven years ago (there are now ninety-seven years since[1]), our forefathers brought forth on this continent (in these regions) a new nation (**cīvitās**). 15. April 14. May 17. June 18. July 19. August 20.

CONNECTED PROSE

To-day, thirteen days after leaving (which day is the thirteenth after we set out from) home, we shall reach the renowned city [of] Rome, which is said to have been founded B.C. 753 (reach Rome, (to) that renowned city, which, etc.). We were very glad to receive (we received very gladly) yesterday the letters which you had written us on October 12. Soon we shall write you of (**dē**) everything which we both see and do (fut. perf.) in this place, which for so many years we have desired to see.

[1] Use **cum** with perf. ind.

EXERCISES IN CONNECTED NARRATIVE

EXERCISE XXIX

Horatius at the Bridge. A

After the Tarquins had been banished from Rome, they fled-for-refuge to Lars Porsena, the king of Clusium, and besought that he would not suffer them to live in exile. Porsena, therefore, came to Rome with a hostile army. When the enemy were at hand, all moved into the city from the fields; the city itself they strengthened by troops (pl. of **praesidium**). The Pons Sublicius almost gave entrance (**iter**) to the foe; but one man, Horatius Cocles, who happened to have been placed (by chance had been placed) on guard at (of) the bridge, when he saw the Janiculum taken by an unexpected attack, and that his [comrades] were abandoning their arms and leaving the ranks (were leaving arms and ranks) in a panic, advised them to destroy the bridge with fire and steel (iron). He promised that as far as one man could, he would withstand the enemy. Thereupon he advanced to the nearer end of the approach (entered the first approach) to the bridge (gen.); nevertheless a sense-of-shame kept two of the Romans with him, Spurius Lartius and Titus Herminius. Except these, no one offered to help him.

EXERCISE XXX

Horatius at the Bridge. B

With these he first withstood the enemy's attack for a little while. Then, when there was [but] a small (narrow)

part of the bridge left (abl. abs.), he forced even (**ipse**) these to retire to a place of safety like-the-rest (also). Thereupon he taunted the chiefs of the Etruscans, and bitterly reproached them for being willing (because they were willing) to compel the Romans to take back their kings. Then, with a yell (raising a shout), the Etruscans, stung by his taunts (lit. "by shame"), let fly their missiles from-every-quarter at their solitary (one) foe. [Now] after (when) he had kept these off (which when he, etc.) for a long time by interposing his shield, he suddenly felt that the bridge was breaking (passive: why?). Observing this, he said, "Father Tiber (adj.: see Voc.), I pray you to receive this armor and this soldier [and carry them] down stream." Then, in-full-armor (armed), he jumped down into the Tiber; and though many a dart was hurled at him, he reached his [friends] unscathed. In consequence the entire state thanked Horatius, and gave him (to whom was given) as much land as he could plow round (**circumarāre**) in one day. Of this deed the fame has lasted even to our own time; for who has not heard how Horatius kept the bridge in the brave days of old (an early and a better age)?

EXERCISE XXXI

Manilian Law. A

In the course of his speech (when he was making, etc.), Cicero said first that he possessed (there was in him) as much influence as the people had resolved (**volō**) that he should possess (that there should be). Next, he promised to use whatever (if any) influence he had among those who had given it to him. He was glad that such a case had been presented to him that in it (in which) it was

harder to find a stopping-place for (of) his speech than a beginning.

After he had explained what (**cuius modī**) was the character of the war which the Romans had to carry on, he admonished the people of the peril to the state unless they should take thought for both citizens and allies. For he told (**doceō**) them that two most powerful kings were threatening Asia [Minor], while [**autem**] it was from Asia that the richest (greatest) revenues of the commonwealth came in (**redeō**), and if these were lost (which having been lost) they would inevitably be (it was inevitable that they should be) deprived of (miss, **requīrō**) the means of carrying on (pl. of **subsidium**) war. Therefore, [he said], they should reflect on what was to be done, so as to keep safe and-set-free (participle) not merely from disaster but from the dread of disaster, those whose great fortunes were at stake [through being] invested in farming the taxes.

EXERCISE XXXII

Manilian Law. B

The consul said that whatever authority he possessed ought to be exercised (used) among those who had given it to him. Then he set forth the perils of a war waged in Asia and carried on against kings (an Asiatic and kingly war). "The great fortunes of the Roman knights," he said, "are at stake, invested in farming your revenues. Lucullus' successor is far from (not enough) prepared to conduct a war of such magnitude (so great). Unless you reflect on what is to be done, you will put many citizens in extreme peril (summon to the highest danger), for whom it is your duty to take thought, both for their own sake and for the sake of the country. For these cannot suffer

ruin without others also losing (so that others do not lose) property and fortunes." Then he inquired whether they intended to be indifferent to the taking of a life (a taken life), and do nothing about (abandon) the murder of an ambassador after he had been cruelly tortured (an ambassador murdered with all punishment); especially since, if they did not protect their own fellow-citizens, no one thereafter would dare to farm the revenues. Wherefore he showed them that it belonged to their humanity to defend, not only from ruin but from the fear of ruin, those whose property was at stake in [the business of] farming the revenues.

EXERCISE XXXIII

Manilian Law. C

Who can compose (find) a speech that shall do justice to (be equal to) Pompey's noble-qualities (**virtūtēs**)? He can be stern in his judgments (gerund) because he is willing for others to be stern critics of him (to be stern judges towards (**in**) himself). Then, he exercises a commanding influence greater than that possessed by all other generals (there is in him as much authority as there was not in the other generals). I believe that [it is] due to the direct guidance of the immortal gods (the immortal gods being leaders) [that] he is in the (**is**) locality where our armies are at-this-moment awaiting a commander. (And) so why should we hesitate to apply to the preservation (gerundive) of the commonwealth this great blessing (this so much of good) which has been proffered us by the immortal gods? For, had not the gods aided him, think you that he would have been the winner of so many fights (used so many successful battles) and defeated so many foes with such [perfect] safety to the republic? For assuredly we should not have

been a match for them (to whom we should assuredly not have been equal) if Pompey had not undertaken the war just at the critical moment of that emergency. Now-if we had many commanders of (dē) whom such things could be said, I should, perhaps, be making a different kind of (another) speech; but as-it-is, since he is the only one who possesses (in whom there are) all the highest [qualifications], ought we not to be ashamed if we allowed any one to hinder us from putting into his hands the conduct of (gerundive) this war?

EXERCISE XXXIV

Manilian Law. D

My remaining duty, apparently, is to say (it remains that it seems that I must say) a few [words] about prestige. For no one doubts that the estimate of our commanders held by the enemy and our allies (what the enemy, what the allies think about our commanders) has an important bearing on the conduct of (gerundive) wars. You will ask, perhaps, what especially creates prestige. You yourselves, Quirites, in expressing (when you made) such flattering opinions about any man as [you have] about Pompey, by that very act created prestige. Moreover, I am not in the least reluctant to (not unwillingly do I) remind you of this, because it is necessary to remember that this power resides in you, so that you may never (lest at any time) use it unwisely or rashly. For it is true that to whom much is given (perf. and pl.), of him much will be required (pres.). Accordingly, not to say more, I assure you that that Pompey possesses prestige in a degree attained by no commander (there is as much prestige in Pompey as in no commander) whose name and

glory have lasted down to (**usque ad**) [the times within] our own recollection. For by the mere report of his renown he (who by mere name and rumor) delayed and checked the enemy's attacks; [while] by his arrival he ended the war, once and for all (abolished and buried the war). And we have no need of many commanders; there is one who by himself can guarantee the safety of (maintain safe) the city, Italy, the commonwealth, the allies, and all the citizens.

EXERCISE XXXV

Manilian Law. E

No one can guarantee good-fortune for (**dē**) himself. Moreover, it is dangerous for human beings to talk too boldly about the power of the gods. But you have said that you remember the past, [and] hope [for] the future. Good (**bene**): for I am sure the gods forgive you this [boldness] and will grant (give) you their indulgence. But do not either say or do anything except what can be both said and done with safety to yourself and the commonwealth (with your own safety, etc.). Also, [one] should always rather thank the gods for what they have done (because they have done) than complain of what (because) they have not done. And so I am not going to proclaim how fortunate I have been; and all the more because we believe that to count one's blessings is essentially somewhat wrong (has in itself something of bad) and is displeasing to the gods. This is certainly what we have heard (so, surely, we have received) from our forefathers, and I hope, my son, that you will not depart from this way (dissent from this view). For a man (**is**) who grumbles because he has no share in the blessings which others

are given is not himself fit to obtain what has not been given to the rest [of mankind]. Wherefore be sure to win your distinctions by the industrious habit (**ratiō**) of your life; for there is no greater [piece of] good luck than this: to have both the ability and the desire (that you may both be able, etc.) to work-hard. But he who will not toil, (pres. ind.: why?), and only waits-to-see if some good [thing] is offered him, most assuredly deserves to be hated by all good [men].

EXERCISE XXXVI

Archias. A

In (by) the (**is**) speech which he made for the poet Archias, Cicero promised that, as far as in him lay, he would bring both aid and deliverance to the man (**is**) from whom he had received that [power] whereby he could win some success as a speaker (win something in speaking) whenever he tried to defend the safety of friends or clients. He begged the judges to suffer him to speak with a little more freedom (a little more freely) [than was usual], and to employ a style of oratory (speaking) which was somewhat at variance with that customary in (the custom of) trials. This concession being granted him, he made them think that Archias ought to have been presented with citizenship even if he had not been a citizen.

He began by saying (said first) that his-client (this) Archias belonged to a distinguished family (**locō nōbilī nātus**) at Antioch, a very populous and wealthy city of Asia, and in that city had been a favorite with (pleasing to) the most learned men; and that afterwards, when he had come to Rome, he had been treated with great respect by many (and) great men; next [he said] that he had been

presented with citizenship by the Heracliots, and lastly that he had registered at Rome before a praetor, according to the law of Silvanus and Carbo, — the law that (which law) gave the citizenship to all who had had their [legal] residence in Italy and who should have registered before a praetor within sixty days.

EXERCISE XXXVII

Archias. B

What reason is there why you should entertain doubts (doubt) concerning my rights-as-a-citizen (citizenship)? For after I moved from Antioch, and not many years before I reached Rome, I had the good-fortune to become a citizen of Heraclea (won the fortune of citizenship at Heraclea); and therefore (on account of which thing) I am eligible to be enrolled [as] a Roman citizen under your laws. Nor is this the only reason why you should think that I ought to be admitted; for, as far as in me lay, I devoted all my interest and all my talent to [the task of] publishing the glory of the Roman people. But if no one had ever taken the trouble to spread abroad the nation's fame, who knows whether that glory and fame would have reached[1] as far as (**eōdem . . . quō**) the weapons wielded by (of) your hands have penetrated? Or are you really so mean-spirited as to think that it makes no difference to you whether foreign nations hear [of] these things, or not? Wherefore I beg of you, jurors, rather to relieve me in-a-spirit-of-humanity (by your humanity) than wrong me through your severity. Then, whatever talent I possess,

[1] When the apodosis of a *past* contrary to fact condition is a dependent clause, as here, it has the future participle with the perfect subjunctive of **sum** (**-ūrus, -a, -um fuerim**). No change is made in the apodosis of the *present* contrary fact condition under such circumstances.

whatever enthusiasm, whatever experience as a writer (of writing) proceeding (having set out) from [my] studies and training in the best branches-of-learning — all this I promise and proffer to you and all the citizens for glorifying the name of the Roman people.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

Archias. C

Is there anything in life more to be coveted than praise and glory? Do you consider it of more [importance] to get everything that you wish for, or to have brought relief to those who needed your assistance? As for me (**mihi quidem**), to do good seems better than to be in the public eye (be gazed upon); nor do I reckon those deserving of honor who, whatever they do, think all must be done for their own benefit (for themselves). For this is of small worth, that you should be praised (inf.) by the lips (conversations) of men, if your deeds are hateful to the immortal gods; nor can he be truthfully called (said) or considered fortunate who thinks it more important to have much (pl.) or to be eulogized by many than to live honorably. Such a man, indeed (**autem**), ought to be admonished that he has lost more than he has gained, for neither monuments nor triumphs are to be coveted unless he who has obtained them has benefited, not himself alone, but his fellow-citizens also. Therefore before you pray the gods for glory, you should pray that you may do your country good, and not interfere with any one's enjoyment of (hinder any one from enjoying) life, liberty, [and] property.

EXERCISE XXXIX

Archias. D

How many men, how honorable [and] how distinguished, were said to have come with official evidence on account of this trial! They did not suppose, but knew that Archias had been entered-on-the-lists at Heraclea. What precautions[1] did Cicero take (of how great diligence was Cicero), who thought nothing too hard to (harder than that he should) attempt, if only he could make the jurors understand that not only must Archias (use a pronoun) not be driven from the state, but that even if he had not been a citizen, he ought to have been most eagerly (**summō studiō**) desired [as one]! "Should not my-friend-here (**hīc**)," he said, "who we know has reached the [degree of] reputation enjoyed by (of) the classic (old) writers, [and] who ought, with perfect justice (by his own right), to be reckoned among those who by their writings have aided mankind (men) in the comprehension of (toward comprehending) moral excellence, — [should not he] be presented with citizenship by those whose deeds have been written about (impers. with **dē**), when Sulla gave this prize to many who did not seek it (pres. part.)? Our forefathers were quick to honor (eagerly reverenced) those by whom [the fame of] the deeds which they had done could be spread abroad; [and] shall we [men] of high principle, banish from the state a man possessing (abl. of quality) such talent as that ought to be considered whose owner (which), [as] you see, is sought after by so many (and so) great men? Or do you say that you do not want your deeds written about? You are truly very different from the

[1] Latin is very apt to use a connective, such as **autem, vērō**, and the like, when a sentence is related in thought to the one preceding.

great Marius, who, although he appeared somewhat indifferent to (**ad**) these matters, yet showed-honor-to Archias, because he understood that without the reward of praise and glory (the reward, etc., being withdrawn), there was no reason why he should exert himself in such toilsome enterprises (labors).

EXERCISE XL

Archias. E

Are you not convinced, jurors, that a man of the (that) high-character which he possesses ought to be relieved in the spirit of (by) humanity rather than wronged through severity? And yet, what harm can be done (what can be harmed) to him who really understands the art of right living? For whether you isolate yourself from other men (**cēterī**) that you may have more leisure (time) for pursuing the studies which belong to mental cultivation, or live (**versor**) where the crowds are thickest (in the most frequented places), you should not be much concerned about (consider of great importance) what others think or say about you, if only in your own heart (by your own feeling) you know that you are living virtuously. Some, it is true (**quidem**), are given to exulting (inf.) because they have the approval of (are praised by) others: it is of much more importance that one have his own approval (that you are praised by yourself). And yet there is no one living who, either because he employed his leisure wisely or because he could be persuaded neither by desire of pleasure nor by fear of pain to do anything but (**nisi**) what would benefit the country, has received (been affected by) such honor as Archias has had accorded him (as has been accorded to Archias) by all for his having (**propter** with perf. part.) treated of Roman history

(**rēs**, pl.) in the most talented fashion (**summō ingeniō**). For that genius ought not to be considered slight by which the deeds which we ourselves and our forefathers have done have been reported almost to the ends of the earth (farthest lands). "But," you will say (**at enim**), "this deals only with his talent (these about talent only); what can be said of his high-character, of which at the beginning of your speech you promised to give some account (set forth)?" Look into [this], jurors, for this [question] does not seem to be asked without reason. I for my part am of the following opinion (so estimate), that no one can wholly devote his talents (talent cannot be entirely devoted by any one) to celebrating the best and noblest deeds unless there exists in him both the utmost inclination towards virtue (gen.) and [the deepest] detestation of wrong. Therefore I do not doubt that this man possesses both high character and many [other] qualities which are correctly held [to be] the attendants of this [one].

EXERCISE XLI

Archias. F

Once I heard a conversation which two very distinguished and learned men were having about writing books. The first speaker (he who made a beginning of talking) said that one who wrote a good book deserved the greatest praise. To him (to whom) the other answered that the Greeks had well said that a great book was a great bore, and that not only was learning necessary (**opus**) in (**ad**) writing a book, but that the man who intended to devote himself to literary pursuits ought above all to be sure to exercise a certain degree of restraint in [his] writing, so as both to charm the reader (those who read) and most

advantageously (best) to set forth what he wished to be understood. For books, [he said] like (**sīcut**) men, were either loved or hated: one book would display (there would be in one book), as it were, a kind of serious air (seriousness); another would be wholly deficient in seriousness, doing (inf.) everything in a light-hearted way (lightly), while [yet] another would have a nature combining (mixed from) [both of] these things.

On another occasion (**posteā**) one of those who were talking at that time, Marcus Cicero, said in the presence of his brother, Quintus Cicero the praetor, that Archias deserved exceedingly well at-the-hands-of (**dē**) the state; for once when he was writing he had devoted all his talent to celebrating its praise and glory. Had he not done this, probably we should not so easily have made all nations not only hear, but really understand that no power has ever existed anywhere so wonderful as [that] of the Roman people.

EXERCISE XLII

Catiline

By [his own] inclination Catiline was impelled toward the basest deeds. For unless he had experienced a certain satisfaction in enduring cold, thirst, [and] hunger, I cannot but think that he would have been deterred from assuming such great risks [as he did], and permitting himself to be hateful in the eyes of all decent men (**bonī**). For it is not to be disguised that for some men a kind of pleasure resides in danger itself, as though their very safety were sweeter when procured by escaping death. And yet Catiline's corps was not to be despised in comparison with the army of the Roman people — [a force] gathered from old men devoid of hope, from bandits, and the other ruined

men whom Cicero mentions in his speeches[1] against Catiline. For when the battle was done (**faciō**), then one[2] might easily have discerned what (**quantus**: why?) daring and what an indomitable spirit (force of spirit) there was in Catiline's army. For it is a well-authenticated fact that no one had deserted the spot (place) which he had chosen (taken) [for fighting,] or had received wounds except in front. Wherever resistance was necessary (it was to be resisted), there they resisted the Romans; they obeyed him whom it was their duty to obey (2d periphrastic), even though (if) they could have saved their lives (sing.) by running away. And the army of the commonwealth could not feel (**crēdō**) that it had won until all Catiline's men (**mīlitēs**) were either slain or taken prisoner, for none of them refused to die fighting (either **cum** clause or pres. part.) for his commander.

EXERCISE XLIII

The Eastern Peril

When the people had gathered in the Forum (acc.: why?), they heard with deep (great) concern how Mithridates was exulting in the victory which he had won (**reportō**, 1) over (**ab**) Lucullus. For when all had supposed that he lay prostrate, so to speak, suddenly, contrary to [the general] expectation, word was brought that he had routed our veteran army (abl. abs.) [and] was besieging with immense forces a city belonging to the allies. Accordingly Cicero assured [them] that a fresh commander, thoroughly experienced (sup.) in warfare, must be despatched to those parts as quickly as possible, if they

[1] Say "speeches made (**habeō**) against," etc., because of the rarity with which, in Latin, prepositional phrases modify nouns.

[2] Use the 2d pers. sing., with the impf. subj. ("indefinite second person").

wished to rescue their surest revenues from [the jaws of] the enemy, [saying] that [it was] beyond question [that] the King, [though] lately he-had-met-with-severe-reverses (**afflictus**) was now taking heart, while (**vērō**) he always, maddened by hatred for (**in** or **ergā** with acc.) the Roman nation, had done it harm as far as he had been able, and had tried to prevent it from being active (**versor**) in Asia at all. There was danger, [he went on to say], that (**nē**) he would ravage the homes of the allies with fire and sword, unless this help were sent them at once. But as when a conspiracy, formed (**habeō**) by citizens [and] long concealed, at length was plainly detected so that it was possible to fight (it could be fought) in the open, so Mithridates' designs could now be clearly seen and perceived, [with the result] that all could understand how great a peril must be withstood.

EXERCISE XLIV

The Character of Cicero

Who doubts that Cicero had a love of glory, too keen, perhaps, but still creditable? For he had laid away, deep in his inmost soul (mind and soul: dat.) the words of philosophers, who affirmed that nothing in life was greatly worth striving for (gerundive) save esteem and honor. And so he admitted that he was always actuated by the desire of esteem. I, who myself have often heard his speeches, remember his saying[1] that all the best men were powerfully attracted by [the prospect of] glory. And that glory was not sought from the living alone, for it is certain that he hoped that even after his death he should not be unconscious (there would not be absent from his conscious-

[1] Pres. inf. of a personal recollection.

ness) what people should be saying about the deeds which in his consulship he had done for the commonwealth. For he had banished from the city Catiline, a man of criminal impulses (an author of crime), with the intention that the citizens to a man might realize that he had plotted against the commonwealth. And it was not his fault but [that] of circumstances (the times) if there were [men] to reproach him bitterly because he had not rather arrested so deadly (**capitālis**) a foe than let him go. For the majority, as if buried in (by) slumber, or like (as if) men who had drunk too much wine, either feigned not to see (dissembled) what they did see, or deemed Catiline's forces contemptible (gerundive of **contemnere**) in-comparison-with the Roman armies, or on account of debt despaired of their deliverance unless through this atrocious league of Catiline's they should be able to gain power and office (pl.), whereby (by which) they might obtain (**comparāre**) a large-amount-of (great) money.

EXERCISE XLV

Concerning Old Age

Before writing, in the book which you intend to publish, that old age is wretched, will you not hear what Cicero, who was a profound philosopher (a man surely very wise), said of old age? For he thinks that old men, albeit they do not have the physical strength of youth(s), nevertheless are so strong in [point of] counsel and authority that they can accomplish more than they ever could by their bodily powers. He told his friends that one must resist old age (impers.), take (use) exercise (pl.), and use (**adhibēre**) so much food that their strength should be revived, not injured (**opprimere**). Moreover, what friends

do we love as much as [we do] those with whom we have been intimate through [the course of] a long life; or what could be more delightful than, released from responsibilities, to recall the deeds which we did in our prime (as young men) and to know that we have used our whole lifetime well and wisely? [One] who has never done a base deed (anything base), [who has] governed his household with justice (justly), recalled striplings from their folly, delivered his native land out of the hands of the enemy, [and] always, as far as he could, done his duty (what he ought) — should not he (**is**) be called truly happy, and not at all an object of commiseration (pitiable)? For my part, if by any means I reach this time of life, I hope so to live that I may look back upon my life as [one] who has come to the end of a journey which, while it lacked neither suffering nor perils, nevertheless has been at the same time full of pleasures, of services which I have performed for others, [and] of kindnesses which I have received from others. Thus, surely, old age must neither be reckoned among [our] misfortunes, nor the rest which it brings looked on with apprehension (dreaded) for-fear-that (**nē**) it may suffer pain from [the recollection of] a a life [which has] not [been] led wisely (after the manner of a wise [man]).

EXERCISE XLVI

The Claims of Pompey

That man ought not to be without a share in the glory of a commander who helped him to obtain (**ad** with gerundive) that glory. Therefore those should be resisted who say that Pompey is not competent to take to this war as his second-in-command the one (**is**) who in his earlier

campaigns made it possible for him to (brought it to pass that he should) have so powerful (so great) a fleet that the enemy, who had formerly flaunted themselves before the Tiber's mouth(s), now could be found nowhere within the Mediterranean (in the sea). What do you think he could have done had he not then been given a sufficient force? Or by what means, with fewer troops, could he have defeated so many of the enemy on land and sea? I have recalled these matters to you (admonished you concerning these things) unwillingly, Quirites, because I know that there are some who do not wish too much power to be committed to one man; but if, however, there is [just] one who possesses all the highest [qualifications], if he is the only one whom the enemy fears, the citizens love, [and] the allies want, and if there is no one else who by his own experience as a commander (his own commands), and by bringing campaigns to a fortunate conclusion (wars fortunately ended) is as well trained as Pompey for conducting all [our enterprises], why should we not gladly accept this great (so great) blessing which has been given us by the immortal gods? Yes (**vērō**, postpos.), we should feel grateful to them (to whom we should feel, etc.) for having already delayed the enemy's attacks so often, before we were ready to decide whom to send to those parts (regions) in defense of our safety.

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES*

VOCABULARY I

Nouns

approbation, renown, laus, laudis, *f.*
authority, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
companion, comes, -itis, *m.*
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
country (*native land*), patria, -ae, *f.*
enemy (*public*); hostis, -is, *m., generally in the pl.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
honor, office (*public*), honōs (honor), -ōris, *m.*
land, terra, -ae, *f.*
man (*male*), vir, virī, *m.*
measure, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
penalty, poena, -ae, *f.*
praetor, praetor, -ōris, *m.*
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
weapons, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*

Pronouns

he, she, it, they, is, ea, id.
himself, herself, itself, themselves, suī, sibi, *etc.*
his, her, hers, its, their, theirs, (*referring to the subject*) suus, -a, -um; (*not referring to the subject*) *gen. of* is, ille, *etc.*
I, ego, meī.
that, is, ea, id; ille, -a, -ud.
this, hīc, haec, hoc; (*especially when qualified by a rel. clause, or referring to something not associated with the speaker*), is, ea, id.
who, which, what, that (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod.

Adjectives

all, omnis, -e.
beautiful, handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
great, magnus, -a, -um.
many, much, multus, -a, -um.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.

Verbs

assign, tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
bestow, mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
call, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
enjoin, praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
give up, hand over, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
join, adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum.
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
pay, pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum.
praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
render, return, reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
surrender, dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.

Adverbs

afterwards, posteā.
also, too, quoque (*postpositive*); etiam.
and (*simple connective*), et; (*combines into a group*), -que, *postpos.*; (*emphasizes following expression*), atque (ac); **both . . . and,** et . . . et.
equally, pariter.

* Proper names will be found only in the General Vocabulary.

not, nōn.
formerly, anteā, quondam.
neither . . . nor, neque (nec) . . . neque (nec).
nor, and . . . not, neque (nec).
once, formerly, quondam.
very, *express by superlative.*
why, cūr.

Preposition

by (*of the agent*), ā, ab, *with abl.*

Idioms

The use of **-ne, nōnne,** *and* **num** *may be thus illustrated:* Are they brave? **Suntne fortēs?** Are they not brave? **Nōnne fortēs sunt?** They are not brave, are they? **Num fortēs sunt?**

VOCABULARY II

Nouns

art, ars, artis, *f.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
commander, dux, ducis, *m.*, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
commendation, laus, laudis, *f.*
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*
dominion, imperium, -ī, *n.*
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
eagerness, zeal, studium, -ī, *n.*
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl. For a military force, in the sing. use* praesidium, manus, exercitus, *etc.*
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
letter, littera, -ae, *f. In the sing. it means a letter of the alphabet; in the pl., an epistle.*
mind, animus, -ī, *m.*
opinion, view, sententia, -ae, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*
risk, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
war, warfare, bellum, -ī, *n.*
way, manner, modus, -ī, *m.*

Pronouns

he, she, it, ille, -a, -ud, *for emphasis or to mark a change of subject.*
this, hīc, haec, hoc.

Adjectives

highest (*of degree*), **utmost**, summus, -a, -um, *sup. of* superus.
new, novus, -a, -um.
no, nūllus, -a, -um.
our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum.
own, *express by possessive, with or without the gen. of* ipse.
tranquil, aequus, -a, -um.
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

Verbs

ask, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with two accs.*
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *with* ab *and abl.*
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum.
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
lay siege to, besiege, oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lead across, trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *with two accs.*
live, vīvō, -ere, vīxī.
establish, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
say, tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
set out, start, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum.
struggle, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *with two accs.*
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.

Adverbs

always, semper.
formerly, quondam, anteā.
gladly, libenter.
here, hīc.
how (*with verbs*), quō modō; quem ad modum.
no longer, nōn iam.
rightly, iūre.
soon, mox.
where, ubi.

Prepositions

according to, *a sign of the abl., with or without* ex. *See grammar.*
under (*of place*), sub, *with abl. after verbs of rest, acc. after verbs of motion;* (*of circumstance*), *express by abl.*
with, cum, *with abl.*
without, sine, *with abl.*

Conjunction

either . . . or, aut . . . aut.

Idioms

accord, of my, your, his, *etc.*, **own**, meā, tuā, suā, *etc.*, sponte.
full meeting of the senate, senātus frequentissimus.
pitch camp, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
wage war against, bellum gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, *with* cum *and abl.*

VOCABULARY III

Nouns

army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
children (*of free parents*), līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
citizenship, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
manner, way, modus, -ī, *m.*
peril, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
place, locus, -ī, *m.*
private enemy, foe, *etc.*, inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
wife, coniūnx, -iugis, *f. The same word, properly "spouse," is also used in the masc. with the meaning "husband."*

Pronouns

mine, my, meus, -a, -um.
who, which, what, quis, quid. *When used as an adj. the form is the same as the rel.*, quī, quae, quod.

Adjectives

any, ūllus, -a, -um, *usually in neg. sentences or those implying a neg.*
hostile, īnfēstus, -a, -um.
how many, quot, *indecl.*
like, similis, -e.
nearer, propior, -ius, *sup.* proximus, -a, -um, *no pos.*
other, another, alius, -a, -ud.
pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
two, duo, -ae, -o.

Verbs

appease, plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
approach, appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat.*
ask one's advice, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultum, *with acc. of the person consulted.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *with dat.*
benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *with dat.*
carry on, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
do harm, noceō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
envy, invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *with dat.*
fail, dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum, *with dat.*
favor, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, *with dat.*
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
look out for the interests or welfare of anyone, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultum, *with dat. of the person benefited.*
obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, *with dat.*
pardon, īgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *with dat.*
place in command, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with acc. of the person appointed and dat. of that over which he is placed.*
please, be pleasing to, placeō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
present, dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat. and acc., or acc. and abl.*
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī, *with dat.*
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.

seem, *passive of* videō.
serve, serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *with dat.*
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum, *with dat.*
surround, circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datum, *with dat. and acc., or acc. and abl.*
threaten, immineō, -ēre, *with dat.*; impendeō, -ēre, *with dat.*
trust, cōnfīdō, -ere, cōnfīsus sum, *with dat.*

Adverbs

ever, umquam.
never, numquam.
not at all, minimē.
otherwise, aliter.
particularly, maximē.

Conjunctions

for, nam, *particularly to justify a preceding statement*; enim, *postpositive.*
however, but, moreover, autem, *postpositive.*

Idioms

belong to: *express by gen. or a possessive adj.*
desire a revolution, novīs rēbus studeō, -ēre, -uī.
feel gratitude towards, feel grateful to, grātiam habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
fellow-citizens, my, your, his, *etc.*, cīvēs meī, tuī, suī, *etc.*
sympathize with, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *with* cum *and abl.*

VOCABULARY IV

Nouns

brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m., or the pl. of* eques, -itis, *m.*, "horseman."
chief, prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*
children, (*of free parents*) līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*; (*general word*) puerī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
day, diēs, -ēī, *m. and f.*; **two days**, bīduum, -ī, *n.*; **three days**, trīduum, -ī, *n.*
daybreak, at, prīmā lūce, *abl. f.*
embassy, office of ambassador, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
god, deus, -ī, *m.*
help, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
inconvenience, impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
mile, mīlle passūs, *m.*; *pl.* mīlia passuum.
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
night, nox, -ctis, *f.*
nothing, nihil, *n., indecl.*
people (*nation*), populus, -ī, *m.*
present, mūnus, -eris, *n.*
protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
reinforcement, subsidium, -ī, *n.*
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
statue, statua, -ae, *f.*
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
use, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
winter, hiems, -emis, *f.*
year, annus, -ī, *m.*

Adjectives

charming, (pleasant), iūcundus, -a, -um.
one, ūnus, -a, -um.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
thirty, trīgintā, *indecl.*
three, trēs, tria.
twenty, vīgintī, *indecl.*
whole, tōtus, -a, -um.

Verbs

accomplish, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
go, eō, īre, iī, itum.
leave, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.
speak, (say, tell), dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; (*converse*) loquor, -ī, locūtus sum.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.
stay, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
undertake, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; **take upon oneself**, mihi, tibi, sibi, *etc.*, suscipiō.

Adverbs

at least, quidem, *postpositive.*
once, ōlim (*cf.* quondam).
nevertheless, tamen.

Preposition

in, on, at, in, *with abl.*

Idioms

here and there in, per, *with acc.*
have many conversations with, saepe loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *with* cum *and abl.*
in early youth, prīmā adulēscentiā.
in early spring, ineunte vēre (vēr, vēris, *n.*).
in recent years, per hōs (*or* hōsce) annōs.
not only . . . but also, nōn { modo / sōlum } sed / vērum } etiam.

VOCABULARY V

Nouns

advantage, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
anxiety, worry, cūra, -ae, *f.*
country (*in contrast to the city*), rūs, rūris, *n.*
evening, vesper, -eris *and* -erī, *m.*
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*
occasion, tempus, -oris, *n.*
senate-house, cūria, -ae, *f.*
senators, patrēs cōnscriptī, *m. pl.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
watch, vigilia, -ae, *f.*

Pronouns

anyone, anything, quisquam, quidquam *or* quicquam; *usually in negative clauses or those implying a negative.*
both, each (*of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque; (*collectively*) ambō, -ae, -ō.
himself, herself, *etc.*, ipse, -a, -um, *intensive.*
none, nēmō. *Instead of the gen. and abl.* nēminis *and* nēmine, nūllīus *and* nūllō *are to be used.* Nūllī *may also be used as a plural of* nēmō; *as,* "nūllī inventī sunt."

Adjectives

delightful, iūcundus, -a, -um.
earlier, prior, prius.
empty, vacuus, -a, -um, *with* ab *and abl.*
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
free, līber, -era, -erum, *with abl.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
short, brevis, -e.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
unfriendly, īnfēstus, -a, -um.

Verbs

arrive at, reach, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *and acc., or the acc. alone of words like* domus, *etc.*
charm, delight, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.
deprive, privō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. and abl.*
free, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. and abl.*
gather, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* in *and acc. of the place of meeting, or the acc. alone of words like* domus, *etc.*
harm, injure, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
lack, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with abl.*
leave . . . for: *see* **set out,** *voc. ii.*
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
return, revertor, -ī, -versus sum. *In the perfect tenses, the act. forms* revertī, reverteram, *etc. are regular.*
rob, spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. and abl.*
side with, help, adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *with acc.*
summon, vocō *or* convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* in *and acc. of the place of meeting, or acc. alone of words like* domus, *etc.*
take from, adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *with dat. of person deprived.*
usher in, introdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

Adverbs

fiercely, ācriter.
first . . . then . . . finally, prīmum . . . deinde . . . dēnique.
from here, hence, hinc.
here, (*in this place*) hīc; (*to this place, hither*) hūc.

long, diū.
now, (*particularly with the idea of culmination*) iam; (*absolutely, or in contrast with an earlier situation*) nunc.
previously, anteā.
right on, usque.
then, tum; deinde; *the latter, particularly of a series.*
there, ibi.

Prepositions

about, during, dē, *with abl.*
from, ab; ex; dē, *with abl.*
to, in; ad, *with acc.*
until, till, ad, *with acc.*

Idioms

late at night, multā nocte; till late at night, ad multam noctem.
take under the protection of the state, in fidem pūblicam recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
unperturbed, aequō animō.
want a change of government, (desire a revolution), novīs rēbus studeō, -ēre, -uī.

VOCABULARY VI

Nouns

avarice, greed, avāritia, -ae, *f.*
class, kind, stock, genus, -eris, *n.*
courage, capacity, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
circumstance, rēs, reī, *f.*
country (*as the possession of the people*), rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.; never in pl.*
crime, scelus, -eris, *n.*
debt, aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, *n.*
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.*
envy, invidia, -ae, *f.*
fear, metus, -ūs, *m.*
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
good fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
iron, ferrum, -ī, *n.*
juror, iūdex, -icis, *m.*
knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*
modesty, pudor, -ōris, *m.*
nobody, no one, *see* none, *voc. v.*
ornament, trinket, ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.*
region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
personality, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
quantity, vīs, vis, *f.* (*lit.* "*force*").
retreat, fuga, -ae, *f.*
robbery, latrōcinium, -ī, *n.*
seriousness, gravitās, -ātis, *f.*
silver, argentum, -ī, *n.*
spear, pīlum, -ī., *n.*
strength (*bodily,*), *the pl. of* vīs, vis, *f.*
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
voyage, cursus, -ūs, *m.*

Pronoun

each, every, quisque, quaeque, quidque; *and adj.*, quodque.

Adjectives

descended, ortus, -a, -um (*part. of* orior).
equal, pār, paris.
extraordinary, eximius, -a, -um.
forty-nine, ūndēquīnquāgintā.
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
illustrious, clārus, -a, um.
noble, amplus, -a, -um.
silver, argenteus, -a, -um.
surpassing, ēgregius, -a, -um.
unique, singulāris, -e.
unpatriotic, impius, -a, -um.

Verbs

abandon, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.
agitate, concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be born, nāscor, -ī, nātus sum.
be of service, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *with dat.*
find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
leave unharmed, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
overwhelm, premō, -ere, pressī, pressum.
put to death, kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
rejoice, exsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
send on, praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
sway, influence, permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
wear, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.

Adverbs

almost, paene.
least, minimē.
often, saepe.
powerfully, maximē.

Prepositions

because of, ob *or* propter *with acc., or use the abl. of cause. See grammar.*

Idioms

of this kind, eius modī.
remember, memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī (*lit.* "*hold in remembrance*").
that famous, the well-known, *etc.* ille, -a, -ud, *placed after the modified word.*

VOCABULARY VII

Nouns

act, factum, -ī, *n.*
burning, incendium, -ī, *n.*
cultivation, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
esteem, laus, laudis, *f.*
good counsel, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
judge, iūdex, -icis, *m.*
justice, iūstitia, -ae, *f.*
misfortune, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
penalty, supplicium, -ī, *n.*
position of authority, imperium, -ī, *n.*
three days, trīduum, -ī, *n.*
villainy, facinus, -oris, *n.*
worth (*personal*), virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

Adjectives

brave, fortis, -e.
covetous, avidus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
deserving, worthy, dignus, -a, -um, *with abl.*
eager, cupidus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
experienced, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
five, quīnque, *indecl.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
just, iūstus, -a, -um.
more, plūs, plūris.
own, proprius, -a, -um,
severe, gravis, -e.
so great, such, tantus, -a, -um.
third, tertius, -a, -um.

Verbs

abide, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
accuse, charge, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with gen. of the charge.*
affect, adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
ashamed, be, pudet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. of the person and gen. of the thing, or inf.*
away, be, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
declare, or **pronounce guilty**, damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with gen. of the charge.*
deem, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
engage in conflict, cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum.
forget, be forgetful of, oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, *with gen. or acc.*
it interests, it is to one's interest, it concerns, it affects, interest *or* rēfert, *with the gen. of nouns, or* meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, *instead of the corresponding personal pronouns.*
keep, safe, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
quarrel, concertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
raise, efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum.
remember, meminī, -isse, *with gen. or acc.*
render (*give*), tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
repent, paenitet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. of the person and gen. of the thing.*
suffer (*of misfortunes*), accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

Adverbs

far, longē.
less, minus.
little, a (*with comparatives*), paulō.
more, magis.
much (*with comparatives*), multō.
than, quam, *or use the abl.*

Idioms

former, the, ille, -a, -ud.
latter, the, hīc, haec, hoc.
lay all responsibility on, omnia tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *with dat.*
obedient, audiēns dictō, *with dat.*
older, maior nātū.
patriotic, patriae amāns.
the . . . the . . . (*with expressions of comparison*), quō . . . eō . . ., *or* quantō . . . tantō . . . .

VOCABULARY VIII

Nouns

accomplice, socius, -ī, *m.*
attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
case, causa, -ae, *f.*
conspirator, coniūrātus, -ī, *m.*
consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*
daring, audācia, -ae, *f.*
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
favor, beneficium, -ī, *n.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
glory, laus, laudis, *f.*
heap, acervus, -ī, *m.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
mental ability, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
midnight, nox media, noctis mediae, *f.*
part, direction, pars, partis, *f.*
price, pretium, -ī, *n.*
punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*
robber, latrō, -ōnis, *m.*
stock, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
swamp, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*
wound, vulnus, -eris, *n.*

Pronouns

each (*of two*), uterque, utraque utrumque.
which (*of two*), uter, -tra, -trum.
your, yours (*of one person*), tuus, -a, -um; (*of more than one*), vester, -tra, -trum.

Adjectives

befitting, dignus, -a, -um, *with abl.*
conflicting, contrārius, -a, -um.
courageous, fortis, -e.
exhausted, cōnfectus, -a, -um.
favored with, adfectus, -a, -um, *with abl.*
few, only a few, paucī, -ae, -a.
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
floundering, impedītus, -a, -um.
glorious, praeclārus, -a, -um.
honorable (*i.e., conferring honor*), amplus, -a, -um.
large, magnus, -a, -um.
middle of, medius, -a, -um, *in agreement with word modified.*
rest of, reliquus, -a, -um, *in agreement with word modified.*
so many, tot, *indecl.*
some, nōnnūllī, -ae, -a.
thousand, mīlle, *in sing. indecl.; in pl.* mīlia, -ium, *n.*
top of, summus, -a, -um, *in agreement with word modified.*

Verbs

arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.
await, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be distant, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *with* ab *and abl.*
contend, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
enjoy, fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, *with abl.*
enter into *or* **upon,** ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *with* in *and acc.*
escape, effugiō, -ere, -fūgī.
flee, fugiō, -ere, -fūgī.
force out of, ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *with* ex *and abl.*
gain possession of, pōtior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *with abl.*
get ready, comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
give chase to, persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
kill, murder, slay, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
meet (*intrans.*), conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* in *and acc.*
need, require, opus est, *with abl. of thing needed and dat. of person needing.*
surround (*intrans.*), circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
use, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *with abl.*

Adverbs

as yet (*till now*), adhūc.
at once, statim.
cruelly, crūdēliter.
lately, nūper.
long, diū.
more, amplius.
nearly, paene.
not yet, nōndum.
too little, parum, *also used as subst. with part. gen.*

too much, nimis, *also used as subst. with part. gen.*
valiantly, fortiter.

Prepositions

amid, inter, *with acc.*
at (*of place*), in *with abl., or the loc. of certain words*; (*of direction*), ad *or* in *with acc.*
into, in *with acc.*
upon (*of place*), in *with abl.*; (*also expressed by dat. after certain verbs*).

Conjunction

but, sed.

Interjection

oh, ō.

Idioms

be the first to, *model:* **they were the first to come**, prīmī vēnērunt.
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.
the one . . . the other, alter . . . alter.
with each other, inter sē.

VOCABULARY IX

Nouns

anxiety, timor, -ōris, *m.*
exile, exsilium, -ī, *n.*
guard, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
joy, laetitia, -ae, *f.*
killing, caedēs, -is, *f.*
leniency, lēnitās, -ātis, *f.*
limit, fīnis, -is, *m.*
madness, furor, -ōris, *m.*
means, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
woe, dolor, -ōris, *m.*

Adjectives

farthest limit of, extrēmus, -a, -um, *in agreement with word modified.*
nocturnal, nocturnus, -a, -um.
true, vērus, -a, -um.

Verbs

admire, admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.
cast down, abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
censure, reprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.
decree, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.
deserve, mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *and* mereor, -ērī, -itus sum.
display, iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
disturb, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
esteem, dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
help, adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum.
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.
give pleasure to, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
let go, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
perceive, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.
place in charge of, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with acc. and dat.*
protect, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *with* ab *and abl.*
say, inquam, inquis, inquit, inquiunt, *introducing a direct quotation.*
thrill, permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
withhold, dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *with acc. and* dē *or* ex *and abl.*

Adverbs

clearly, plānē.
courageously, fortiter.
daily, cotīdiē.
diligently, dīligenter.
even (*i.e.*, "*all the way*"), usque.
justly, iūre.
next, deinde.
or not (*in direct questions*), annōn; (*in indirect questions*), nōnne.
really, vērē.
wherefore, quā rē.

Conjunction

or (*in alternative questions*), an.

Idiom

form a plan, cōnsilium capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.

VOCABULARY X

Nouns

ambassador, envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
attempt, cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*
crisis, discrīmen, -inis, *n.*
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*
destruction, exitium, -ī, *n.*
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
fellow, (*term of contempt*) homō, -inis, *m.*, (*associate*) socius, -ī, *m.*

king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
meeting, concilium, -ī, *n.*
movement, mōtus, -ūs, *m.*
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
treachery, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
warfare, rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, *f.*

Adjectives

end of, extrēmus, -a, -um, *in agreement with word modified.*
false, falsus, -a, -um.
skilled, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*

Verbs

admit, fateor, -ērī, fassus sum.
arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.
be free from, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with abl.*
be ignorant, īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be sorry, doleō, -ēre, -uī.
be unaware, nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
bring word, report, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
check, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
confess, cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum.
consider, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
crush, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
declare, pronounce, dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, dictum.
demand, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. of thing demanded and dat. of person of whom the demand is made.*
deny, say that . . . not, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
divulge, ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
enter upon, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
fail in one's duty, dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*
feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.
feign, simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
find, discover, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī.
hope, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
know, sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; *or perf. tenses of* cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.
prepare for, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
promise, polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum.
reply, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
report, renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
rescue, ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
think, arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
try to avoid, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

Adverbs

for a long time now, long since, iam prīdem.
the day before, prīdiē.

Preposition

against, cōntrā, *with acc.*

Idioms

in early spring, ineunte vēre (vēr, vēris, *n.*).
inform, certiōrem faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
make an attack on, impetum facere in, *with acc.*
threaten with, vocāre ad, *with acc.*
with good intentions, bonō animō.

VOCABULARY XI

Nouns

bane, pestis, -is, *f.*
battle, pugna, -ae, *f.*
dwelling, tēctum, -ī, *n.*
expression, vultus, -ūs, *m.*
face, ōs, ōris, *n.*
guard, custōs, -ōdis, *m.*
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
labor, labor, -ōris, *m.*
matter, rēs, reī, *f.*
method, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
mother, māter, mātris, *f.*
name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
patrol, vigilia, -ae, *f.*

Pronoun

a certain, some, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *and subst.* quiddam.

Adjectives

enough, satis, *indecl., with gen.*
how great, quantus, -a, -um.
how important, quantus, -a, -um.
how numerous, quot, *indecl.*

past, superior, -ius (*comp. of* superus).
tributary, vectīgālis, -e, *also as subst.*, vectīgālis, -is, *m.*

Verbs

ask, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *with* ab *and abl.*
cry out, clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
decree, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.
determine, statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
go from, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
hold an opinion, iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
intend, *use the 1st periphrastic conjugation.*
not know, nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
ordain, praescrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.
overhear, exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
overpower, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
return, revertor, -ī, reversus sum. *In the perfect tenses the active forms*, revertī, *etc., should be used.*
reveal, ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
seek, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
think (*consider*), cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
wait to see, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* sī *and subj. of indir. quest.*

Adverbs

easily, facile.
just as, aeque ac.
once, semel.
only, tantum.
well, bene.
whence, unde.
whither, quō.
wholly, omnīnō.

Preposition

concerning, dē, *with abl.*

Conjunctions

whether, num; -ne (*enclitic*).
whether . . . or, utrum . . . an; -ne . . . an.
whether . . . or not (*in dir. quest.*), utrum . . . annōn; (*in indir. quest.*), utrum . . . necne. *For other forms, see the grammar.*

Idioms

again and again, etiam atque etiam.
make war on, bellum īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with dat.*

VOCABULARY XII

Nouns

chain, bond, vinculum, -ī, *n.*
death, mors, -rtis, *f.*
design; good sense, cōnsiliŭm, -ī, *n.*
gladiator, gladiātor, -ōris, *m.*
grandfather, avus, -ī, *m.*
insurrection, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*
jaws, faucēs, -ium, *f., pl.*
knight, eques, -itis, *m.*
Nearer Gaul, Gallia citerior, Galliae citeriōris, *f.*
plebs, plēbs, plēbis *or* plēbēs, -ēī, *f.*
prison, carcer, -eris, *m.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
two days, bīduum, -ī, *n.*

Adjectives

ancient, antīquus, -a, -um.
distinguished, clārus, -a, -um.
new, novus, -a, -um.
of consular rank, cōnsulāris, -e.
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
sufficient, satis, *indecl., with gen.*
the other (cēterus), -a, -um (*nom. sing. m. not found*).

Verbs

butcher, trucīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
complete, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
conspire, coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
enrol, cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.
escape, profugiō, -ere, -fūgī.
fasten together, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum.
intrust, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *with acc. and dat.*
kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
omit, pass over, praetermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
overthrow, ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.

plunder, dīripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.
put down, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, pressum.
ravage, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
restrain, coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
set free, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. and abl.*
suppose, think, exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
tend, pertineō, -ēre, -uī, *with* ad *and acc. of ger.*

Adverbs

not even, nē . . . quidem, *separated by the emphatic word.*
too, nimis.
truly, vērē.

Idioms

at dawn, prīmā lūce.
have (*anything done*), cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with gerundive in agreement with the obj.*
for the purpose of, for the sake of, causā, *following a gen.*
ought, should, must, *use the 2d periphrastic conjugation.*
the whole world, orbis terrārum (orbis, -is, *m*).
with fire and sword, ignī ferrōque.

VOCABULARY XIII

Nouns

beginning, initium, -ī, *n.*
by command, iussū, *abl. m.*
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
effort, labor, -ōris, *m.*
fear, timor, -ōris, *m.*
fugitive slave, fugitīvus, -ī, *m.*
wall (*of a house*), pariēs, -etis, *m.*
word, vōx, vōcis, *f.*
work, opus, operis, *n.*
wrong, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

Adjectives

easy, facilis, -e.
hard, difficilis, -e.
inevitable, necesse, *indecl.*
private, prīvātus, -a, -um.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
wise, sapiēns, -entis.

Verbs

appreciate, realize, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
attain, adipīscor, -ī, adeptus sum.
attempt, try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; temptō *and* tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with inf.*
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *with inf.*
be wont, soleō, -ēre, -itus sum, *with inf.*
can, possum, posse, potuī, *with inf.*
cease, dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *with abl. or inf.*
command, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, *with acc. and inf.*
desire, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *with inf.*
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *with inf.*
drag, trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum.
fear, timeō, -ēre, -uī.
forbid, vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *with acc. and inf.*
force, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, *with inf.*
hesitate, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with inf.*
it is permissible, one may, licet, -ēre, -uit, *and* -itum est, *impers.*
keep secret, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
leave, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *with* ex *and abl.*
make up one's mind, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *with inf.*
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with inf.; or* oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
permit, sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm, *with inf.*
resign, concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
suffer, patior, -ī, passus sum, *with inf.*
think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
want, wish, volō, velle, voluī, *with inf.*
would rather, mālō, mālle, māluī, *with inf.*

Adverbs

exceedingly, vehementer.
further, praetereā.
hence, hinc.

honorably, honestē.
how (*with adjs. and advs.*), quam.
long ago, iam anteā.
now, iam.

Idiom

most madly, summō furōre.

VOCABULARY XIV

Nouns

aid, *see* help, *voc. iv.*
ally, socius, -ī, *m.*
assembly, coetus, -ūs, *m.*
children, puerī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* (*general word: children of free parents are often called* līberī).
conceal, *see* keep secret, *voc. xiii.*
cruelty, crūdēlitās, -ātis, *f.*
darkness, tenebrae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
defenses, moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*
ear, auris, -is, *f.*
entreaty, prex, precis, *f.*
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*
fight, proelium, -ī, *n.*
general's authority, imperium, -ī, *n.*
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*
humanity, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
liberty, lībertās, -ātis, *f.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
madness, āmentia, -ae, *f.*
massacre, *see* killing, *voc. ix.*
outrage, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
power, general's authority, imperium, -ī, *n.*
proof, indicium, -ī, *n.*
prowess, *see* courage, *voc. vi.*
public interests, *see* commonwealth, *voc. i.*
purpose, mēns, mentis, *f.*
ruin, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*
severity, sevēritās, -ātis, *f.*
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
torch, fax, facis, *f.*
without the order, iniussū, *abl. m.*

Pronoun

that of yours, iste, -a, -ud.

Adjectives

clear, manifēstus, -a, -um.
depraved, desperate, perditus, -a, -um.
else, *see* other, *voc. iii.*
foreign, exterus, -a, -um.
immortal, immortālis, -e.
infamous, nefārius, -a, -um.
whole, ūniversus, -a, -um.
wicked, improbus, -a, -um.

Verbs

aim at, ask, ask for, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *with* ab *and abl. of the person of whom the request is made.*
be enabled; be able, *see* can, *voc. xiii.*
be engaged, versor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
behave, mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
bring to one's notice, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc.*
change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
check, reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
consider, cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
dread, metuō, -ere, -uī.
exercise authority, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
gain, impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
go in, ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
go out, *see* go from, *voc. xi.*
lay waste, *see* ravage, *voc. xii.*
observe, percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
protect, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
restore, restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
rush out, ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.
set on fire, incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum.
take the place of, succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with dat.*
tell of, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
touch (*with emotion*), *see* move, *voc. xi.*
watch, vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
win, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Adverbs

faithfully, dīligenter.
for, for indeed, etenim.
how many times, quotiēns.
so (*chiefly with adjs. and advs.*), tam; (*chiefly with verbs*), ita.

Preposition

among, apud, *with acc.*
on account of, propter, *with acc.*
within, in *with abl.*

Conjunction

except, nisi.

Idiom

be hated, in odiō esse *with* apud *and acc.*
in recent years, per hōs (*or* hōsce) annōs.
lay violent hands on, vim et manūs īnferre, *with dat.*
survivors, eī quī supersunt.

VOCABULARY XV

Nouns

ancients, the, maiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*
exile, an, exsul, -ulis, *m.*
force (*military*), praesidium, -ī, *n.*
harm, dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*
honor, afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with acc. of the person receiving the honor and abl. of that with which he is honored.*
murder, caedēs, -is, *f.*
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*
principles, disciplīna, -ae, *f.*
representative, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
respect, *see* **esteem,** *voc. vii.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
stranger, aliēnus, -ī, *m.*
suspicion, suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*

Pronoun

any, anyone, anything (*after* sī, nisi, nē, num), quis, qua, quid.

Adjectives

burdened, oppressus, -a, -um.
civil, domesticus, -a, um.
cowardly, timidus, -a, um.
in harmony with, proprius, -a, -um, *with gen.*
well qualified, idōneus, -a, -um, *with dat. or with* ad *and acc.*

Verbs

advance, prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with* ut *and subj.*
aid, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*
appear, *see* **seem,** *voc. iii.*
arouse, incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* ad *and acc.*
avoid, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be afraid, *see* **fear,** *voc. xiii.*
be alarmed, pertimēscō, -ere, -timuī.
beseech, ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* ut *and subj.*
bury, sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, -pultum.
come to pass, fīō, fierī, factus sum, *with* ut *and subj.*
conduct, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
happen, accidō, -ere, -cidī, *with* ut *and subj.*
increase, crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum.
induce, addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *with* ut *and subj.*
instruct, praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *with dat., and* ut *and subj.*
look to it, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *with* ut *and subj.*
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *with dat., and* ut *and subj.*
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī, *with inf.*
provide for, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *with dat.*
recommend, suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *with dat., and* ut *and subj.*
remind, admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with* dē *and abl., and acc. of person admonished.*
take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *with* ut *and subj.*

Adverbs

everywhere, ubīque.
likewise, item.
thither, eō.
very little, minimē.

Idioms

be sure to, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* ut *and subj.*
bring one's mind to, animum indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *with* ut *and subj.*
day by day, from day to day, in diēs.
for the future, in reliquum tempus.
make the mistake of, committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *with* ut *and subj.*
the outcome was, ēvēnit, *with* ut *and subj.*

VOCABULARY XVI

Nouns

disagreement, dissēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
evidence, testimōnium, -ī, *n.*

fault, vitium, -ī, *n.*
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
native land, patria, -ae, *f.*
possession, possessiō, -ōnis, *f.*
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
scoundrel, scelerātus, -ī, *m.*
victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*

Adjectives

agreeable, sweet, dulcis, -e.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
only ; the only one, sōlus, -a, -um ; ūnus, -a, -um.
reckless, audāx, -ācis.
relying, frētus, -a, -um, *with abl.*
troubled, commōtus, -a, -um.

Verbs

avert, dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
be in difficulties, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
confess, fateor, -ērī, fassus sum.
contemplate (*aim at*), quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
discourage, dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with* nē, quīn, *or* quō minus *and subj.*
dissemble, dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
doubt, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *followed, in neg. or interrog. sentences, by* quīn *and subj.*
hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *with* nē, quīn, *or* quō minus *and subj.*
make sure, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* ut *and subj.*
not wish, be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *with inf.*
object, refuse, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* nē, quō minus, *or* quīn *and subj.*
open, patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum.
prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with infin.*
show, *see* **teach**, *voc. ii.*

Adverbs

already, iam.
certainly, profectō.
in fact, vērō.
so many times, totiēns.
still (*till now*), adhūc.
strongly, vehementer.

Preposition

before, in the presence of, apud, *with acc.*

Conjunction

and yet . . . not, neque tamen.

Idioms

at the house of, ad *or* apud *with acc.* (*e.g.*, **at Cicero's, at Cicero's house**, ad Cicerōnem).
bring aid, auxilium ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *with dat.*
deliver *or* **make a speech**, ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
disagree with, dissentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *with* ab *and abl.*
guilty conscience, cōnscientia scelerum.
in no way, nūllō pactō.
insane, mente captus.
such, eius modī.
the absent, eī quī absunt.
there is no doubt that, it is not doubtful that, nōn est dubium quīn, *with subj.*
there is no reason why, nihil est quod, *with subj.*

VOCABULARY XVII

Nouns

altar, āra, -ae, *f.*
assassination, caedēs, -is, *f.*
comrade, socius, -ī, *m.*
deliberation, dēlīberātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
deliberative body, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
conflagration, incendium, -ī, *n.*
hearth, focus, -ī, *m.*
leader (*political*), prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
tablet, tabula, -ae, *f.*
talent, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*

Pronoun

that person (*used forensically, or in contempt*), iste, -a, -ud.

Adjectives

angry, īrātus, -a, -um, *with dat.*
august, sānctus, -a, -um.
incorrigible, perditus, -a, -um.

influential, gravis, -e.
possessed of, praeditus, -a, -um, *with abl.*
such, tālis, -e.
twentieth, vīcēsimus, -a, -um.
unknown (*of facts*), obscūrus, -a, -um.

Verbs

assure, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat.*
be anxious, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
be glad, be glad of, laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
be present at, intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat. or* in *and abl.*
form an opinion, iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
keep *or* **be silent**, taceō, -ēre -uī, -itum.
outstrip, excellō, -ere, -celsum, (*no perf.*), *with dat.*
perform, perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
plot against, īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus sum, *with dat.*
present (*offer*), offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum.
pretend, simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
purpose, statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.
reign, rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
show attentions to, colō, -ere, coluī, cultum.
stand between, intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with* inter *and acc.*

Adverbs

before, ante.
especially, maximē.
even, etiam; **and even**, atque etiam.
forsooth, scīlicet.
from *or* **at a distance**, procul.
late, sērō; **too late**, *comp.* sērius.
nay even, immō vērō.
quickly, celeriter.
violently, vehementer.

Preposition

within, intrā, *with acc.*

Conjunctions

as, ut, *with indic.*
because, quod; quia, *with indic.*
inasmuch as, since, quoniam, *with indic.*
lest, nē, *with subj.*
that (*in subst. clauses stating a fact, not in indirect discourse*), quod, *with indic.*
then (*introducing an inference*), igitur, *usually postpositive.*

Idioms

be one's good fortune, contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *used impersonally with dat. and inf.*
cannot help, facere nōn possum quīn, *with subj.*
get out of the way, dē mediō tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
how (*with verbs*), quem ad modum.
must needs, necesse est, *with infin. or subj.* (accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum).
such being the case, quae cum ita sint.
there is the additional circumstance that, accēdit quod, *with indic.*

VOCABULARY XVIII

Nouns

breath, spīritus, -ūs, *m.*
Campus Martius, campus, -ī, *m.*; *or, fully expressed*, campus Mārtius.
coming, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
disturbance, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*
evil, malum, -ī, *n.*
firebrand, fax, facis, *f.*
heaven, caelum, -ī, *n.*
men of Chios, Chiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
onslaught, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
politics, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.* (*not used in pl.*).
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*

Pronoun

the other side (*forensic use*), *m. pl. of* iste, -a, -ud.

Adjectives

enjoying, praeditus, -a, -um, *with abl.* (*lit.* "*provided with*").
former (*of time*), superior, -ius.
Manlius', Mānliānus, -a, -um.
naval, maritimus, -a, -um.
successful, secundus, -a, -um.

Verbs

assert, praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
avenge; **claim**, vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be willing, volō, velle, voluī.
bring to pass, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with* ut *and subj.*
detect, dēprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.
exist, exsistō, -ere, -stitī.
feel the need of, miss, dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
insist, cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
predict, praedīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum.
provide (*procure*), comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
raise (*stir up*), concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
recoil from, abhorreō, -ēre, -uī, *with* ab *and abl.*
succeed in, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *with acc.*
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

Adverbs

greatly, magnoperē.
however, quamvīs.
in the name of the state, pūblicē.
perhaps, fortāsse.
surely, profectō.
yet, tamen.

Prepositions

after, post, *with acc.*
in behalf of, prō, *with abl.*

Conjunctions

albeit, etsī.
although, though, quamquam, *with indic.*; etsī, etiamsī, tametsī, *with indic. or subj.* (*see grammar*); cum, licet, quamvīs, *with subj.*
even if, etiamsī, *with ind. or subj.*
granted that, licet, *with subj.*
however much, quamvīs, *with subj.*
if, sī *with ind. or subj. After* exspectō *takes subj.*
notwithstanding, tametsī, *with indic. or subj.*

Idioms

a little while before, paulō ante.
cannot keep . . . from, *see* **cannot help**, *voc. xvii.*
of yourselves, (ipsī) per vōs.
what reason is there why, quid est quod, *with subj.*

VOCABULARY XIX

Nouns

book, liber, -brī, *m.*
carefulness, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
condition, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
desert, meritum, -ī, *n.*
fact, rēs, reī, *f.*
health, valētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
influence, auctōritas, -ātis, *f.*
integrity, innocentia, -ae, *f.*
mercy, venia, -ae, *f.*
opportunity, potestās, -ātis, *f.*
pursuit, studium, -ī, *n.*
refinement, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
report, rumor, rumor, -ōris, *m.*

Adjectives

daring, audāx, -ācis.
how much, quantus, -a, -um.
one at a time, singulī, -ae, -a.
open, apertus, -a, -um.
plain, manifēstus, -a, -um.
wretched, miser, -a, -um.

Verbs

account, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
be surprised, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
be well, valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
catch sight of, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
come together, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
consider (*contemplate*), cōnsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
demand (*as a right*), postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
desire, expetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
drive, drive from, ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
foresee, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum.
go forth, excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with* ex *and abl.*
guard, custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
make arrangements, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
take care of, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
worry, commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.

Adverbs

greatly (*in expressions of esteem and concern*), magnī.
to the same place, eōdem.
unjustly, iniūriā.

Conjunctions

after, postquam, *with ind.*
as soon as, ubi, cum prīmum, ut prīmum, simul atque, *with ind.*
as soon as ever, ut prīmum, *with ind.*
the moment (that), simul atque, *with ind.*
when, cum, *with ind. and subj.*, ubi, *with ind.*

Idioms

as soon as possible, quam prīmum.
be as strong as possible, quam plūrimum valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
be sure to, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* ut *and subj.*
be to the advantage of, *see* **it is to one's interest**, *voc. vii.*
bring to trial, in iūdicium addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
devote oneself to (*of occupations*), mē, tē, sē, etc., cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc.*
discuss with, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *with* cum *and abl.*
good-bye, *pres. imperative of* valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
in accordance with, *use the abl.*
of this kind, huius modī.
on the one hand . . . (and) on the other, cum . . . tum.
send greeting, salūtem dō, dare, dedī, datum; *often abbreviated*, S. D.

VOCABULARY XX

Nouns

cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cesspool (*bilge*), sentīna, -ae, *f.*
domain, imperium, -ī, *n.*
doom (*fate*), fātum, -ī, *n.*
hillock, tumulus, -ī, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.*
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
space, spatium, -ī, *n.*
vote (*of the senate*), sententia, -ae, *f.*

Adjectives

alone, sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um.
forty-ninth, ūndēquīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um.
four, quattuor, *indecl.*
perilous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.

Verbs

annex, adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *with* ad *and acc.*
assemble (*intrans.*), conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
commit (*of crimes*), concipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
contain, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
decide on, statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
deliberate, dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
demand, poscō, -ere, poposcī.
devote, trānsmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *with* ad *and acc.*
draw out, exhauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustum.
execute (*perform*), praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum.
go on, *pass. of* gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
lay before, referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc.*
make requisition for, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc., and dat. of the person of whom the requisition is made.*
open, aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum.
press on, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
proclaim (*threaten*), dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
recur, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
report (*announce*), nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat.*; (*lay facts before*), dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc.*
retreat (*flee*), fugiō, -ere, fūgī.
stop (*cease*), dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *with inf.*
take, sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum.
yield, concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.

Adverbs

a second time, iterum.
there (*thither*), eō.

Conjunctions

as long as, dum; quoad, *with ind.*
before, antequam; priusquam, *with ind. and subj.*
until, dum; quoad, *with ind. and subj.*
while, dum, *with ind.*

Idioms

by himself, per sē ipsum.
draw nearer to, propius accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with acc.*
for such time as, tam diū dum.
so long in advance, tantō ante.

VOCABULARY XXI

Nouns

carefulness, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
Comitium, comitium, -ī, *n.*
garrison, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
government, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
nation (*particularly of foreign nations*), gēns, gentis, *f.*
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
strategy, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
weapon (*missile*), tēlum, -ī, *n.*

Adjectives

bare, nūdus, -a, -um, *with abl.*
foreign, exterus, -a, -um.
gentle, mild, lēnis, -e.
too much, nimius, -a, -um.

Verbs

accomplish, attain, adsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
accuse, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
act, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
administer, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be afraid, vereor, -ērī, -itus sum.
betray, prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
cease, dēsinō, -ere, -siī, -situm.
fall from, excidō, -ere, -cidī, *with* ex *or* dē *and abl.*
fear, pertimēscō, -ere, -timuī.
go, eō, īre, iī, itum.
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
make (*of a speech*), habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, statum.

Adverbs

arrogantly, superbē.
at some time, aliquandō; (*after* sī, nē, num), quandō.
wisely, sapienter.

Conjunctions

but if (*after a preceding* sī, *expressed or implied*), sīn.
if not, unless, nisi.
whether . . . or whether (*in alternative conditions*), sīve . . . sīve; seu . . . seu.

Idioms

as many . . . as, tot . . . quot.
punish, poenās sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *with* dē *and abl.*; be punished, poenās dō, dare, dedī, datum, *with dat. of the person by whom the penalty is inflicted*; visit with punishment (*especially of the death penalty*), suppliciō adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
surrender myself, yourself, himself, *etc.*, and all my, your, his, *etc.*, possessions, mē meaque omnia, tē tuaque omnia, sē suaque omnia, *etc.*, dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *with dat.*
there is no doubt that, nōn est dubium quīn; nēminī est dubium quīn, *with subj.*
within human recollection, post hominum memoriam.

VOCABULARY XXII

Nouns

abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
dignity; majesty, dignitās, -ātis, *f.*
fear, metus, -ūs, *m.*
gratitude, grātia, -ae, *f.*
ill will, invidia, -ae, *f.*
patriots, bonī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
villain, netārius homō, netāriī hominis, *m.*

Adjectives

innocent; upright, innocēns, -entis.
profligate, perditus, -a, -um.

Verbs

accomplish, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
appoint, cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum.
be between, intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with* inter *and acc.*
dread, timeō, -ēre, -uī.
happen, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
hate, ōdī, ōdisse ; *perf. with pres. force;* **be hated,** in odiō esse, *with* apud *and acc.*
help, stand by, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*
put in charge, praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with acc. of the person appointed and dat. of that of which he is put in charge.*
secure, pariō, -ere, peperī, partum.
take from, ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *with* ex *and abl.*

Adverbs

as if, quasi.
as it is, nunc.
however, vērō, *postpositive.*
how often, quotiēns.
immediately, statim.
O that, would that, utinam ; *neg.* nē *or* utinam nē.

Conjunction

as long as, if only, provided, provided that, dum ; modo ; dum modo, *with subj.*

Idioms

be greatly mistaken, vehementer errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
feel *or* be grateful, grātiam habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
have more power, plūs valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
thank, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *with dat.*
with the consent of the senators, auctōritāte patrum.

VOCABULARY XXIII

Pronoun

very, ipse, -a, -um.

Adjectives

cruel, crūdēlis, -e.
original, prīstinus, -a, -um.
permanent, perpetuus, -a, -um.
surprising, mīrus, -a, -um.

Verbs

answer, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
assert, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
deserve, dignus sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *with rel. and subj.;* dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with inf.*
expect, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with fut. inf. and subj. acc.*
gain a request, impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
happen (*especially of fortunate occurrences, while* accidō *frequently refers to misfortunes*), contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum.
perish, intereō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
talk, loquor, -ī, locūtus sum.

Adverbs

early, mātūrē.
of one's own accord, ultrō.
right, rightly, rēctē.
thus, sīc.

VOCABULARY XXIV

Nouns

barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
force, vīs, vis, *f.*
intimate friend, familiārissimus, -a, -um, *with possessive* meus, tuus, suus, *etc.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
parent, parēns, -entis, *m. and f.*
pirate, praedō, -ōnis, *m.*
residence, domicilium, -ī, *n.*
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
tidings, nūntius, -ī, *m.*

Adjectives

three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
unharmed, incolumis, -e.

Verbs

arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum.

beg, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
bring to, adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum.
cut off, interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.
cut to pieces, kill, occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
devastate, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
fall, be killed, occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum.
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
go back, return, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
harangue, cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
learn, learn of, cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum.
pursue, persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
register, make declaration, profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, *with* apud *and acc. of the person before whom the declaration is made.*
state, praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
throw into disorder, perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
worship, veneror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

Adverbs

bravely, fortiter.
so, sīc.
too, *use the comparative; see also the General Vocabulary.*

Idioms

a movement is on foot, id agitur ut, *with subj.*
as . . . as possible, quam *with superlative.*
do deeds, perform exploits, rēs gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
join battle, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
take pains, operam dō, dare, dedī, datum, *with* ut *and subj.*
take to flight, tergum (*with pl. verb*, terga), vertō, -ere, vertī, versum.

VOCABULARY XXV

Nouns

nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*
unpopularity, invidia, -ae, *f.*
will, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*

Pronoun

whoever, quisquis, quidquid *and* quicquid; *adj. forms: f.* quaequae, *n.* quodquod.

Adjectives

as (so) much; as (so) important, tantus, -a, -um.
off one's guard, inopīnāns, -antis.
what sort of; of what sort, qualis, -e; cuius modī.

Verbs

attack (*of aiming a blow*), petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; (*of a hostile approach*), adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum.
bestow, dēfero, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc.*
come into conflict, cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *with* cum *and abl.*
desire, optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
execute, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
exist, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
incur, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
lead back, redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.

Adverbs

as often, totiēns.
before, anteā.
voluntarily, ultrō.

Prepositions

before, ante, *with acc.*
for, in defense of, prō, *with abl.*
through, per, *with acc.*

Idioms

as, *after* tālis, quālis; *after* tam, quam; *after* tantus, quantus; *after* tot, quot; *after* totiēns, quotiēns; *after* eius modī, quī; *after* īdem, quī.
conduct oneself, mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
declare war, bellum indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *with dat.*
observe, animō (*with pl. forms of verb*, animīs), percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
the more . . . the less, quō magis . . . eō minus.

VOCABULARY XXVI

Nouns

advice, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
cupidity, cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*
earth, terra, -ae, *f.*
instruction (*precepts*), praecepta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
mischief, maleficium, -ī, *n.*
patrol, vigilia, -ae, *f.*
sense, sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
stillness, silentium, -ī, *n.*
way (*method*), ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*

Pronouns

actual, ipse, -a, -um.
any (*interr.*), ecquis, ecquid, *and adj.* ecquī, ecqua, ecquod.

Adjectives

bad, malus, -a, -um.
different, alius, -a, -ud.
flat, plānus, -a, -um.
greatest, great (*of figurative eminence*), summus, -a, -um.
lasting, fīrmus, -a, -um.
learned, doctus, -a, -um.
rich, locuplēs, -ētis.

Verbs

alarm, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
be agreed upon, cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *with* ad *and ger.*
commit (*of crimes*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
consider, exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hurl, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
imagine, opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
pacify, pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
perceive (*distinguish*), cernō, -ere, crēvī, certum; (*grasp*), percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
provide for, provideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *with dat.*
spring from, orior, -īrī, ortus sum, *with* ab *and abl.*
terrify, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

Adverb

entirely, omnīnō.

Preposition

in defense of, prō, *with abl.*

Idioms

all the, *with sup.*, quisque, *with sup.* (*e.g.* "*all the bravest men*," fortissimus quisque).
be necessary, *use 2d periphr.*
in no wise, nūllō mōdō.

VOCABULARY XXVII

Nouns

character, genus, -eris, *n.*
forefathers, maiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
human being, man, homō, -inis, *m. and f.*
ruin, perniciēs, (ēī), *f.*
torture, cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*

Pronoun

whoever, whosoever, quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.

Adjectives

as great, tantus, -a, -um.
excellent, optimus, -a, -um.
honorable, honestus, -a, -um.
six, sex, *indecl.*

Verbs

be afraid, pertimēscō, -ere, -timuī.
be inactive, quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum.
cry (*shout*), clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
engage, cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *with* cum *and abl.*
guard (*preserve*), servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
laugh, rīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, rīsum.
lead across, trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *with 2 accs.*
meditate, cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
refuse, repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Adverbs

as (*after* eādem), quā.
by the same way *or* **route**, eādem.
carefully, dīligenter.
differently from, aliter atque (ac).
forsooth, vidēlicet.
home, homewards, domum.
merely, tantum.
scarcely, vix.
thence, inde.
there (*by that way*), eā; (*thither*), eō.

to a different place from, aliō atque (ac).
to *or* for the same place, eōdem.
where (*whither*), quō ; (*by which or what way*), quā.

Conjunctions

and so, itaque.
but if, quod sī.

Idioms

hold supreme control, summās imperī teneō, -ēre, -uī.
make it possible, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with* ut *and subj. of* possum.
march, iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
the . . . the (*with comparatives*), quō . . . eō.
with equanimity, aequō animō.

VOCABULARY XXVIII

Nouns

arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
Kalends, Kalendae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
Nones, Nōnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
Ides, Idūs, -uum, *f. pl.*
president (*of a republic*), cōnsul, -is, *m.*
magistracy, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*

Adjectives

January, Iānuārius, -a.
February, Februārius, -a.
March, Mārtius, -a.
April, Aprīlis, -is.
May, Maius, -a.
June, Iūnius, -a.
July, Quīntīlis, -is ; *later named* Iūlius *in honor of Julius Caesar.*
August, Sextīlis, -is ; *later named* Augustus *in honor of the Emperor Augustus.*
September, September, -bris.
October, Octōber, -bris.
November, November, -bris.
December, December, -bris.

When the month was simply named, the masculine form, with or without the word mēnsis, "*month*," *was employed. In conjunction with the words* Kalendae, Nōnae, *or* Īdūs, *the name of the month was used as an adjective; e.g.,* Kalendae Iūniae (*June* 1) *means literally "Junian Kalends." The neuter forms of these words are not found.*

eight, octō, *indecl.*
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
eighteenth, duodēvīcēsimus, -a, -um.
eleventh, ūndecimus, -a, -um.
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fiftieth, quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um.
nine, novem, *indecl.*
ninety, nōnāgintā, *indecl.*
nineteenth, ūndēvīcēsimus, -a, -um.
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
seven, septem, *indecl.*
seven hundredth, septingēsimus, -a, -um.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
seventieth, septuāgēsimus, -a, -um.
sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
thirteenth . . . seventeenth, tertius decimus, *etc.*
thousandth, mīllēsimus, -a, -um.
twelfth, duodecimus, -a, -um.

Verbs

arise from, orior, -īrī, ortus sum, *with* ab *and abl.*
began, coepī, -isse. *If the accompanying inf. is passive, the passive forms* coeptus sum, *etc., are used.*
enter upon (*of an office*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
found, condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
instigate, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
perish, pereō, -ire, -iī, -itum.
read (*aloud*), recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sound (*test*), temptō *and* tentō, -āre -āvī, -ātum.

Adverbs

about, circiter.
at first, prīmō.
with all one's might, maximē.
yesterday, herī, *or* hesternō diē.

Idioms

A.D., post Chrīstum nātum.
B.C., ante Chrīstum nātum.
Of course the Romans themselves could not have used these expressions in pre-Christian times.
in the consulship of, *use the abl. abs.; e.g.*, **in the consulship of Cicero**, Cicerōne cōnsule, *lit.* "*Cicero* (*being*) *consul.*"

VOCABULARY XXIX

Nouns

approach, aditus, -ūs, *m.*
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fire, ignis, -is, *m.*
rank, ōrdō, -dinis, *m.*
sense of shame, pudor, -ōris, *m.*

Adjective

unexpected, repentīnus, -a, -um.

Verbs

be at hand, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
banish, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
destroy, rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum.
flee for refuge, cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī.
keep, teneō, -ēre, -uī.
move from, dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* ex *or* dē *and abl.*
place, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
promise, offer, prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
strengthen, fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

Adverbs

almost, paene.
as far as, quantum.
by chance, forte.
thereupon, inde.

Preposition

except, praeter, *with acc.*

Conjunction

therefore, igitur, *regularly postpos.*

Idioms

in a panic, perterritus, -a, -um.
on guard, in statiōne.

VOCABULARY XXX

Nouns

age, aetās, -ātis, *f.*
armor, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
dart, missile, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
fame, fāma, -ae, *f.*
land, ager, agrī, *m.*
shame, pudor, -ōris, *m.*
shout, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*

Adjectives

early (*of former times*), prīstinus, -a, -um.
entire, omnis, -e.
narrow, exiguus, -a, -um.
stung (*agitated*), commōtus, -a, -um.
unscathed, incolumis, -e.

Verbs

arm, armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
break, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum.
compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, *with inf.*
interpose, obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
jump down, dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultum.
keep off, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
last, permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum.
let fly, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
observe, cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.
pray, precor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
raise, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
reproach, incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
retire, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum.
take back, recipiō, -ere, cēpī, -ceptum.

Adverbs

bitterly, graviter.
from every quarter, undique.
suddenly, subitō.

Idioms

down stream, secundō flūmine.
first . . . then, prīmum . . . deinde.
in consequence, quō factum est ut, *with subj.*
taunt, verbīs lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
to a place of safety, in tūtum.

VOCABULARY XXXI

Nouns

beginning, prīncipium, -ī, *n.*
disaster, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*
dread, formīdō, -inis, *f.*
fortunes (*property*), rēs, rērum, *f. pl.*
revenue, tax, vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*
stopping-place (*lit.* "*outlet*"), exitus, -ūs, *m.*

Adjective

powerful, potēns, -entis.

Verbs

admonish, admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with* dē *and abl. of the thing brought to notice.*
be at stake, *pass. of* agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
do, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
explain, expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *with or without* verbīs.
farm (*of collecting taxes*), exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
keep safe, cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reflect on, cōnsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
take thought, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultum, *with dat.*

Conjunction

therefore, quā rē (*lit.* "*wherefore; on account of which thing*").

VOCABULARY XXXII

Nouns

property, rēs, rērum, *fem. pl.*; **property and fortunes**, rēs ac fortūnae.
punishment (*especially of the death penalty*), supplicium, -ī, *n.*

Adjectives

Asiatic, Asiaticus, -a, -um.
kingly, rēgius, -a, -um.

Verbs

abandon, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.
be indifferent to, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
inquire, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
it is my duty, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
murder, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
set forth, expōnō, -ēre, -posuī, -positum.
take (*by violence*), ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.

Adverbs

especially, praesertim.
thereafter, posteā.

Idioms

belong to, *use* (1) *a pred. gen. with* sum, *or* (2) *a possessive pron.*
successor, is quī succēdit (succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum), *with dat.*
suffer ruin *or* **disaster**, calamitātem accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

VOCABULARY XXXIII

Nouns

battle, proelium, ī, *n.*
emergency, tempus, -oris, *n.*
locality, *pl. of* regiō, -ōnis, *f.*

'Adjective

stern, sevērus, -a, -um.

Verbs

aid, adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *with acc.*
allow, patior, -ī, passus sum.
apply, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc.*
be ashamed, pudet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with the acc. of the person and gen. of the thing, or an inf.*
defeat, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
judge, iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
preserve, cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
proffer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, *with acc. and dat.*
put into the hands of, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *with acc. and dat.*
think (*believe*), crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.

Adverbs

assuredly, profectō.
at this moment, nunc.
why? quid?

Conjunction

now if, quod sī.

Idiom

just at the critical moment, ad ipsum discrīmen.

VOCABULARY XXXIV

Nouns

arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
recollection, memoria, -ae, *f.*

Pronoun

any, anyone *or* **anything you will,** quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs, *and adj.* quodvīs.

Adjectives

flattering (*honorable*), praeclārus, -a, -um.
necessary, necesse, *indecl.*
unwillingly, *say* "*unwilling*," invītus, -a, -um.

Verbs

abolish, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
delay, retardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
create, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
maintain, praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stātum.
require (*demand*), requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum.
reside (*be in*), īnsum, -esse, -fuī, *with* in *and abl.*
think, exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Adverbs

at any time, aliquandō; (*after* num, sī, nē) quandō.
rashly, temerē.
unwisely, nōn sapienter.

Conjunction

accordingly, itaque.

Idioms

by himself, per sē.
it is true, vērum est, *with* ut *and subj.*
it remains, reliquum est, *with* ut *and subj.*
not to say more, ut plūra nōn dīcam.

VOCABULARY XXXV

Nouns

blessing, bonum, -ī, *n.*
distinction, honōs, -ōris, *m.*
future, the, reliqua, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
good fortune, good luck, fēlīcitās, -ātis, *f.*
indulgence, venia, -ae, *f.*
past, the, praeterita, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*
view (*proposition*), ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*

Adjectives

dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.
displeasing, invīsus, -a, -um.
fit, idōneus, -a, -um, *with rel. and subj.*
fortunate, fēlīx, -īcis.
industrious, labōriōsus, -a, -um.
rest, the, (cēterus), -a, -um (*nom. sing. m. not in use*).

Verbs

be sure, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
complain, grumble, queror, -ī, questus sum.
count, ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
dissent, dissentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum.
forgive, īgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum, *with dat. of person.*
guarantee, praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stātum.
obtain, impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
offer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum.
proclaim, praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
toil, work hard, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
win (*get*), cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.

Adverbs

boldly, audācter.
most assuredly, sānē.

Preposition

about, dē, *with abl.*

Conjunctions

except, nisi.
moreover, autem, *postpositive.*

Idioms

and all the more, eōque magis.
be sure to, operam dō, dare, dedī, datum, *with* ut *and subj.*
have no share in, expers, -pertis sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *with gen.*

VOCABULARY XXXVI

Nouns

aid (Ops), opis, *f.* (*Nom. sing. does not occur except as the name of the goddess of Plenty.*)
client, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
concession, venia, -ae, *f.*
custom, cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
deliverance, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
style, genus, -eris, *n.*
trial, iūdicium, -ī, *n.*

Adjectives

learned, ērudītus, -a, -um.
pleasing, iūcundus, -a, -um.
sixty, sexāgintā, *indecl.*

Verbs

beg, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *with* ab *and abl.*
bring, adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum.
employ, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum.
grant, tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.

Adverbs

freely, līberē.
lastly, postrēmō.
whereby, *say* "*by which.*"

Conjunction

whenever, cum.

Idioms

as far as in me lies, quantum in mē situm est.
be at variance with, abhorreō, -ēre, -uī, *with* ab *and abl.*
make (*one do anything*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, *with* ut *and subj.*
treated with great respect, summō honōre adfectus, -a, -um.

VOCABULARY XXXVII

Nouns

branches of learning, *pl. of* ars, artis, *f.*
enthusiasm, interest, study, studium, -ī, *n.*
experience (*practice*), exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
training, disciplīna, -ae, *f.*

Pronoun

whoever, whatever, sī quis, sī quid, *and adj.* sī quī, sī qua, sī quod.

Adjective

eligible, idōneus, -a, -um, *with rel. and subj.*

Verbs

admit, ascīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum.
devote (*apply*), cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc.*
enroll, ascrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.
glorify, ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
penetrate, penetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
proffer, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
publish, spread abroad, celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
relieve, levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
wrong, violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Adverb

really (*in truth*), vērō.

Idioms

it makes no difference, nihil interest, *with gen. of nouns, and* meā, tuā, *etc., in place of the pers. prons.*
mean-spirited, parvī animī, *gen. m.*
on account of which thing, wherefore, quam ob rem.
possess (*of qualities*), in mē, tē, *etc.*, est.
take the trouble, operam dō, dare, dedī, datum, *with* ut *and subj.*

VOCABULARY XXXVIII

Nouns

assistance, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
conversation, sermō, -ōnis, *m.*
monument, monumentum, -ī, *n.*
property, bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
relief, *see* **aid**, *voc. xxxvi.*
triumph, triumphus, -ī, *m.*

Adjectives

hateful, invīsus, -a, -um.
more important (*of more importance*), plūris, *gen. n.*

Verbs

admonish, praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *with dat.*
consider, dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, ductum.
covet, expetō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītum.
eulogize, honor, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
gaze upon, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
get, obtain, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum ; adipīscor, -ī, adeptus sum.
pray, optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. of thing requested and* ab *with abl. of the one to whom the prayer is addressed.*
reckon, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
wish for, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.

Adverb

truthfully, vērē.

Idioms

is of small worth, parvī rēfert.
deserving of, *use 2d periphr.*

VOCABULARY XXXIX

Nouns

moral excellence, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
prize, praemium, -ī, *n.*
reward, mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*
right, iūs, iūris, *n.*
writer, scrīptor, -ōris, *m.*
writing, scrīptum, -ī, *n.*

Adjectives

distinguished, nōbilis, -e.
indifferent, dūrus, -a, -um.
official, pūblicus, -a, -um.
old, vetus, -eris.

Verbs

banish, ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
comprehend, percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
enter on the lists, ascrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.
exert, exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
reverence, show honor to, colō, -ere, -uī, cultum.
seek after, expetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
suppose, opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
withdraw, dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum.

Adverbs

eagerly, studiōsē.
truly, vērō.

Idioms

be very different from, multum differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum, *with* ab *and abl.*
deeds, rēs gestae, rērum gestārum, *f. pl.*; **to do (great) deeds**, rēs gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
of high principle, rēbus optimīs īnstitūtus, -a, -um.
reckon among, ex eō numerō exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
somewhat, *use the comparative.*
the great, ille, -a, -ud, *following the word with which it agrees.*

VOCABULARY XL

Nouns

attendant, comes, -itis, *m.*
desire, cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*
detestation, odium, -ī, *n.*
feeling, sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
genius, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
high character, pudor, -ōris, *m.*
honor, laus, laudis, *f.*
inclination, studium, -ī, *n.*
leisure, ōtium, -ī, *n.*
mental cultivation, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
pain, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
qualities, artēs, -ium, *f. pl.*
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
wrong, scelus, -eris, *n.*

Adjectives

farthest, ultimus, -a, -um.
frequented, celeber, -bris, -bre.
living, vīvus, -a, -um.
noble, nōbilis, -e.
of great importance, magnī, *gen. n.*
of more importance, plūris, *gen. n.*
slight, exiguus, -a, -um.

Verbs

accord, attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
be convinced, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
be given to (*be wont*), soleō, -ēre, -itus sum.

celebrate, celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
estimate, cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsum.
exult, exsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hold (*consider*), dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
isolate, sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.
look into, cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnovī, -gnitum.
treat of, attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum.

Adverbs

correctly, rēctē.
for my part, quidem, *postpos.*
virtuously, honestē.

Conjunctions

and yet, atque tamen; **and yet . . . not**, neque tamen.

Idiom

pursue studies, artīs colō, -ere, coluī, cultum.

VOCABULARY XLI

Nouns

bore, malum, -ī, *n.*
learning, doctrīna, -ae, *f.*

Pronoun

a kind of, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *and adj.* quoddam.

Adjectives

distinguished, inlūstris, -e.
wonderful, mīrus, -a, -um.

Verbs

be deficient in, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with abl.*
be in, īnsum, -esse, -fuī, *with* in *and abl.*
love (*as a friend*), dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
mix, misceō, -ēre, -uī, mixtum.
set forth, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum.

Adverbs

above all, maximē.
as, tam.
as if, quasi.
best, optimē.
lightly, leviter.

Preposition

in the presence of, apud, *with acc.*

Idioms

literary pursuits, scrībendī studium.
exercise a certain degree of restraint, modum quendam adhibeō, -ēre,-uī, -itum.

VOCABULARY XLII

Nouns

bandit, latrō, -ōnis, *m.*
cold, frīgus, -oris, *n.*
corps, manus, -ūs, *f.*
hunger, famēs, -is, *f.*
inclination, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*
old man, senex, senis, *m.*
satisfaction, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*
spirit, animus, -ī, *m.*
thirst, sitis, -is, *f.*

Adjectives

base, turpis, -e.
devoid of hope, dēspērātus, -a, -um.
in front, adversus, -a, -um.
ruined, perditus, -a, -um.

Verbs

desert, dēserō, -ere, -uī, -sertum.
deter, dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
despise, contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum.
discern, cernō, -ere, crēvī, certum.
disguise, dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
endure, perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
escape (*shun*), vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
experience (*enjoy*), fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, *with abl.*
gather, conligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
impel, exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
mention, commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
permit, patior, -ī, passus sum.
procure, pariō, -ere, peperī, partum.
run away, fugiō, -ere, fūgī.
take prisoner, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.

Adverb

as though, quasi.

Prepositions

in comparison with, prae, *with abl.*
towards, ad, *with acc.*

Conjunction

wherever, ubi.

Idioms

cannot but, facere nōn possum quīn, *with subj.*
in the eyes of, *express by using the dat.*
it is a well-authenticated fact, satis cōnstat.

VOCABULARY XLIII

Nouns

concern (*suffering*), dolor, -ōris, *m.*
hatred, odium, -ī, *n.*
nation, populus, -ī, *m.*
parts (*of a country*), *pl. of* regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*

Adjectives

fresh, novus, -a, -um.
immense, maximus, -a, -um.
maddened, furēns, -entis.
prostrate, prōstrātus, -a, -um.
sure, certus, -a, -um.
veteran, vetus, -eris.

Verbs

besiege, obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum.
conceal, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lie, iaceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
prevent, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *with* nē, quōminus, *or* quīn, *and subj.*
rout, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
suppose, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
withstand, resistō, -ere, -stitī.

Adverbs

at all, omnīnō.
at length, tandem.
in the open, palam.
plainly, manifēstō.

Idioms

beyond question, sine contrōversiā.
contrary to expectation, praeter opīniōnem.
possible, *express by using forms of* possum.
so to speak, ut ita dīcam.
take heart, rēbus meīs, tuīs, suīs, *etc.*, melius cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum.

VOCABULARY XLIV

Nouns

author, auctor, -ōris, *m.*
consciousness, sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
desire, studium, -ī, *n.*
fault (*blame*), culpa, -ae, *f.*
league, societās, -ātis, *f.*
love, amor, -ōris, *m.*
philosopher, sapiēns, -entis, *m.*
slumber, somnus, -ī, *m.*

Adjectives

atrocious, foedus, -a, -um.
creditable, honestus, -a, -um.
keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.
the majority, plērusque, -aque, -umque, *generally in plur.*
to a man, cūnctus, -a, -um.

Verbs

actuate, trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum.
admit, cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum.
affirm, cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
attract, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
be absent, absum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, with **ab** *and* abl.
despair of, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* dē *and abl., or with acc.*
drink, bibō, -ere, bibī.
gain, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
lay away, mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. and dat.*
let go, ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
realize, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.
reproach, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
strive for, expetō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītum.

Adverbs

alone, sōlum.
bitterly, vehementer.
deep, deeply, penitus.
rather, potius.
still (*nevertheless*), tamen.

Conjunction

save, nisi ; *also prep.* praeter, *with acc.*

Idioms

it is certain, satis cōnstat.
mind and soul, animus mēnsque.
with the intention that, eō cōnsiliō ut, *with subj.*

VOCABULARY XLV

Nouns

counsel, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
exercise, exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
folly, stultitia, -ae, *f.*
food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
old age, senectūs, -ūtis, *f.*
household, familia, -ae, *f.*
kindness, officium, -ī, *n.*
lifetime, time (*age*), aetās, -ātis, *f.*
misfortune, malum, -ī, *n.*
physical strength, powers, *pl. of* vīs, vīs, *f.*
responsibility, cūra, -ae, *f.*
rest, requiēs, -ētis, *f.*
service, officium, -ī, *n.*
stripling, youth, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*
suffering, dolor, -ōris, *m.*

Adjectives

bodily, *use gen. of* corpus, -oris, *n.*
delightful, dulcis, -e.
happy, fēlīx, -īcis.
long, longus, -a, -um.
pitiable, miserandus, -a, -um.

Verbs

accomplish (*attain*), cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
be strong, valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
bring, adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum.
come to, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *and acc.*
govern, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.
look back upon, respiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
perform, fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, *with abl.*
publish, ēdō, -ere, -didī, ditum.
recall (*call back*), revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum ; (*recollect*), recordor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *with acc.*
release, solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum.
revive, reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

Adverbs

at the same time (*also*), quoque, *postpos.*
justly, iūstē.
surely, sānē.
thus, ita.

Conjunction

albeit, cum, *with subj.*

Idioms

after the manner, *abl. of* mōs, mōris, *m.*
as much . . . as (*adv.*), tam . . . quam ; tantum . . . quantum.
be intimate with, familiāriter ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *with abl.*
suffer pain, dolōrem capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.

VOCABULARY XLVI

Nouns

campaign, bellum, -ī, *n.*
command, imperium, -ī, *n.*
fleet, classis, -is, *f.*
mouth (*of a river*), ōstium, -ī, *n.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
second in command, lēgātus, -ī, *n.*
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

Adjectives

competent, idōneus, -a, -um, *with rel. and subj.*
earlier, superior, -ius.
well-trained, ērudītus, -a, -um.
without a share in, expers, -pertis, *with gen.*

Verbs

commit (*hand over*), trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
decide, cōnstituō, -ere, stituī, -stitūtum.
end (*of a war*), cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
flaunt, iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
love, amō, -āre, āvī, -ātum.
want, expetō, -ere, -īvī, ītum.

Adverbs

formerly, ōlim.
fortunately, fēlīciter.
nowhere, nusquam.
so often, totiēns.

Idiom

on land and sea, terrā marīque.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

abandon, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.
abide, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
abolish, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
about (*prep.*), dē, *with abl.*; (*adv.*), circiter.
Abraham, Abraham, -ae, *or indecl.*, *m.*
abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
accept, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
accomplice, socius, -ī, *m.*
accomplish, adsequor *and* cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum; cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
accord (*verb*), attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum; **of my, your, his,** *etc.*, **own accord**, meā, tuā, suā, *etc.*, sponte.
accordingly, itaque.
according to, *express by the abl., with or without* ex.
account (*consider*), habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
accuse, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with gen. of the charge.*
act (*verb*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; (*noun*), factum, -ī, *n.*
actual, ipse, -a, -um.
actuate, trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum.
A.D., post Chrīstum nātum.
administer, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
admire, admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
admit (*adopt*), ascīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum; (*confess*), cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum; fateor, -ērī, fassus sum. Cōnfessus *rather than* fassus *should be used in writing prose.*
admonish, admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with acc. of the person and* dē *and abl. of the thing;* praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *with dat. of the person.*
advance, prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
advantage, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
advice, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
Aeduan, Aeduus, -ī, *m.*
affect, adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
affirm, cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
afraid, be, timeō, -ēre, -uī.
after (*prep.*), post, *with acc.*; (*conj.*), postquam.
after the manner, mōre.
afterwards, posteā; post.
again and again, etiam atque etiam.
against, contrā, *with acc.*
age, aetās, -ātis, *f.*
agitate, concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
agreeable, dulcis, -e; iūcundus, -a, -um.
aid (*verb*), (*stand by*), adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*; (*help in any way*), iuvō *and* adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *with acc.*
aid (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, *n.*; (Ops), opis, *f.* *The nom. sing. of the latter word is not used except as the name of the goddess of Plenty.*
aim at, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
a kind of, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *and adj.* quoddam.
alarm, moveō *and* commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
albeit, cum, *with subj.*; etsī, *with indic. or subj.*
a little while before, paulō ante.
all, omnis, -e; **all the** (*with superl.*), quisque, *with superl., in sing.*
allow, patior, -ī, passus sum; sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm.
ally, socius, -ī, *m.*
almost, ferē, paene.
alone (*adj.*), sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), sōlum; tantum.
already, iam.
also, quoque, *postpos.*, etiam.

altar, āra, -ae, *f.*
although, cum; etiamsī; etsī; licet; quamquam; quamvīs.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
American, Americānus, -a, -um.
amid, among, inter, *with acc.*, apud, *with acc.*
a movement is on foot, id agitur ut, *with subj.*
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um; **the ancients**, maiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*
and (*simple connective*), et; (*connecting and uniting in thought*), -que, *enclitic;* (*laying emphasis on the second of the two things connected*), atque *and* ac. *Do not use the form* ac *before a vowel.*
and all the more, eōque magis.
and so, itaque.
and yet, atque tamen; **and yet . . . not**, neque tamen.
angry, īrātus, -a, -um.
annex, adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *with* ad *and acc.*
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
Antioch, Antiochia, -ae, *f.*
anxiety, cūra, -ae, *f.*; (*fear*), timor, -ōris, *m.*
any, anyone, anything, aliquis, aliquid, *and adj.* aliquī, aliqua, aliquod; (*after* sī, nisi, nē, num), quis, quid, *and adj. f. and n.*, qua, quod; (*in neg. expressions*), quisquam, quaequam, quidquam *or* quicquam, *adj.* quodquam; **any one** *or* **anything you please**, quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs, *and adj.* quodvīs; (*interr.: "is there any one who?" etc.*), ecquis, ecquid, *and adj.* ecquī, ecquae *and* ecqua, ecquod; (*adj. in neg. expressions*), ūllus, -a, -um.
appear, videor, -ērī, vīsus sum.
appease, plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
apply, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc. of that to which the thing is applied.*
appoint, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
appreciate, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
approach (*verb*), adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat.;* (*noun*), aditus, -ūs, *m.*
approbation, laus, laudis, *f.*
Archias, Archiās, -ae, *m.*
arise from, orior, -īrī, ortus sum, *with* ab *and abl.*
arm, armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
armor, arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arouse, incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive at, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *and acc.* Ad *is omitted with names of towns*, domus, *etc.*
arrogantly, superbē.
art, ars, artis, *f.*
as (*conj.*), ut, *with indic.*
as (*in correlative sentences*), **as** (*with adj. or adv.*) . . . **as**, tam . . . quam; **as . . . as possible**, quam, *with sup.*; **as many . . . as**, tot . . . quot; **as often . . . as**, totiēns . . . quotiēns; **such . . . as**, tālis . . . quālis; eius modī . . . quī; **as great . . . as**, tantus . . . quantus; **the same . . . as**, īdem . . . quī; **by the same way . . . as**, eādem . . .quā; **as much . . . as** (*adv.*) tantum . . . quantum; tam . . . quam; **as** (*to introduce a predicate noun*), *usually not translated.*
a second time, iterum.
as far as, quantum; **as far as in me lies**, quantum in mē situm est.
as great, tantus, -a, -um.
ashamed, be, pudet, -ēre, -uit, *with acc. of pers. and gen. of thing, or inf.*
Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*
Asiatic, Asiaticus, -a, -um.
as if, quasi; velut sī, *with subj.*
as it is (*contrasted with a previous assumption*), nunc.
as it were, quasi.
ask, ask for, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with two accs.;* (*request*) petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *with* ab *and abl.;* (*inquire*) quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *with* ab *and abl.*

ask one's advice, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultum, *with acc. of the person consulted.*
as long as (*of time*), dum; quoad; (*provided that*), dum; modo; dum modo, *with subj.*
as many, tot.
as much, tantus, -a, -um.
as often, totiēns.
assassination, caedēs, -is, *f.*
assemble (*intrans.*), conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; (*trans.*), convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
assembly, coetus, -ūs, *m.*
assert, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
assign, tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *with dat.*
assistance, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
as soon as, ubi; cum prīmum; ut prīmum; simul atque; *with ind.*
as soon as ever, ut prīmum, *with ind.*
as soon as possible, quam prīmum.
assure, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
assuredly, profectō.
as though, quasi; velut sī, *with subj.*
as yet, adhūc.
at (*of place*), in, *with abl.; of names of towns*, domus, *etc.*, *use loc.;* (*near*), ad, *with acc.;* (*of time*), *use abl.*
at all, omnīnō.
at any time, aliquandō; *after* num, sī, nē, quandō *may be used.*
at first, prīmō.
at least, quidem, *postpos.*
at length, at last, tandem.
at once, statim.
atrocious, foedus, -a, -um.
attract, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
at some time, *see* **at any time.**
at the same time (*also*), *express by* īdem, item, *or* quoque.
attack (*verb*), (*charge upon*), impetum faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, *with* in *and acc.;* (*thrust at*), petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; (*rise up against*), adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum.
attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attain, adsequor *and* cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum; adipīscor, -ī, adeptus sum.
attempt (*verb*), cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; temptō *and* tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*noun*), cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*
attendant, comes, -itis, *m.*
at the house of, ad, *with acc.*
at this moment, nunc.
august, sānctus, -a, -um.
August, Augustus, -ī; (*before the time of the first Roman emperor*), Sextīlis, -is (*sc.* mēnsis).
author, auctor, -ōris, *m. For the author of a book*, scrīptor *may also be used.*
authority, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
avarice, avāritia, -ae, *f.*
avenge, vindicō, -āre, -āvī, ātum.
avert, depellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
avoid, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
await, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
away, be, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *with* ab *and abl.*

bad, malus, -a, -um.
band, manus, -us, *f.*
bandit, latrō, -ōnis, *m.*
bane, pestis, -is, *f.*
banish, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum; ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m*
bare, nūdus, -a, -um.
base, turpis, -e.
battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*; pugna, -ae, *f.*
B.C., ante Chrīstum nātum.
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
be able, possum, posse, potuī.
be absent, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *with* ab *and abl.*
be afraid (*greatly*), pertimēscō, -ere, -timuī; (*be in state of fear*), timeō, -ere, -uī; (*be in awe*), vereor, -ērī, -itus sum; (*be apprehensive*), metuō, -ere, -uī.
be agreed upon, cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *with* ad *ana acc. of noun or ger.*
be alarmed, *see* **be afraid.**
be anxious to, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *with inf.*
be ashamed, pudet, -ēre, -uit, *with acc. of the person and gen. of the thing, or inf.*
be at variance with, abhorreō, -ēre, -uī, *with* ab *and abl.*

bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
be as strong as possible, quam plūrimum valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
be at hand, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
be at stake, *passive of* agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
be between, intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with* inter *and acc.*
be born, nāscor, -ī, nātus sum.
because, quod; quia, *with indic.*
because of, *abl. of cause;* ob *or* propter *with acc.*
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
be convinced, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
be deficient in, careō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *with abl.*
be distant from, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *with* ab *and abl.*
be enabled, *see* **be able.**
be engaged, versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *with* in *and abl.*
befitting, dignus, -a, -um, *with abl.*
before (*adv.*), anteā; ante; (*prep.*), ante, *with acc.;* (*in the presence of*), apud, *with acc.;* (*conj.*), antequam; priusquam.
be free from, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with abl.*
beg, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *both words with* ab *and abl. of the person entreated.*
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum. *Instead of the perfect of this verb it is better to use* coepī, -isse. *If the infin. depending on this verb be passive, use* coeptus sum *instead of* coepī.
beginning, initium, -ī, *n.*; prīncipium, -ī, *n.*
be given to (*be accustomed*), soleō, -ēre, solitus sum.
be glad, be glad of, laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
be greatly mistaken, vehementer errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be hated, in odiō esse, *with* apud *and acc.*
behave, mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
be ignorant, īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be in, īnsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with* in *and abl.*
be inactive, quiēsco, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum.
be indifferent to, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
be in difficulties, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be intimate with, familiāriter ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *with abl.*
Belgae, Belgae, -ārum, *m. pl.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *with dat. of pers. but acc. of* FACT *believed.*
belong to, *express by a pred. gen. with* sum, *or use a possessive pron.*
be necessary, *use the 2d periphr.*
benefit, be of service, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *with dat.*
be of small worth, parvī rēfert.
be one's good fortune, *3d sing. of* contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *with dat. of the person benefited.*
be pleasing to, placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
be present at, intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat., or* in *and abl.*
beseech, ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
besiege, obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum.
be silent, taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
be sorry, doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with inf. or a* quod-*clause.*
best (*adv.*), optimē.
bestow, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc., or with dat.;* mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat.*
be strong, valeō, -ere, -uī, -itum.
be sure, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
be sure to, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum (*particularly in the imper.*); operam dō, dare, dedī, datum, *all with* ut *or* nē *and subj.*
be surprised, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *with acc. and inf., or a* quod-*clause.*
be the first to, *use* prīmus *in aggrt. with the subject of the verb, as* prīmī flūmen trānsiērunt, "*they were the first to cross the river.*"
be to the advantage of, *see* **it is to one's interest.**
betray, prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.

better (*adj.*), melior, -ius; (*adv.*), melius.
be unaware, nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
be very different from, multum differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum, *with* ab *and abl.*
be well, valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
be willing, volō, velle, voluī.
be wont, soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, *with inf.*
beyond question, sine contrōversiā.
bitterly, graviter; vehementer.
blessing, bonum, -ī, *n.*
bodily, *gen. of* corpus, -oris, *n.*
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
bold, audāx, -ācis.
boldly, audācter.
boldness, audācia, -ae, *f.*
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
bore, malum, -ī, *n.*
born, be, nāscor, -ī, nātus sum.
both, uterque, -traque, -trumque (*lit.* "*each*"; *only used in sing., except when referring to two groups*); ambō, -ae, ō; **both . . . and**, et . . . et.
branches of learning, *pl. of* ars, artis, *f.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
break, frango, -ere, frēgī, frāctum.
breath, spīritus, -ūs, *m.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, ferō *and* adferō, -ferre, (at)tulī, (ad)lātum.
bring aid, auxilium ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *with dat.*
bring forth, pariō, -ere, peperī, partum.
bring one's mind to, animum indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *with* ut *and subj.*
bring to, adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum, *with* ad *and acc.*
bring to one's notice, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc.*
bring to pass, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with* ut *and subj.*
bring to trial, in iūdicium addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
bring word, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
Brundisium, Brundisium, -ī, *n.*
Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, *m.*
burdened, oppressus, -a, -um.
bury, sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum.
but, sed; autem (*postpos.*); vērum; at.
butcher, trucīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
but if (*when there is a preceding condition*), sīn; (*when a condition does not precede*), quod sī.
by (*of the agent*), ab, *with abl.*; (*of the means*), *the abl. without a prep.*
by chance, forte.
by command, iussū, *abl. m.*
by himself, per sē; per sē ipsum.
by the same way *or* **route**, eādem.

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
call, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
campaign, stīpendium, -ī, *n.*; bellum, -ī, *n.*
Campus Martius, campus, -ī, *m.*; *or, fully expressed*, campus Mārtius.
can, possum, posse, potuī.
cannot but, cannot help, cannot keep from, facere nōn possum, *with* quīn *and subj.*
capacity, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
Capua, Capua, -ae, *f.*
Carbo, Carbō, -ōnis, *m.*
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
carefully, dīligenter.
carefulness, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
carry on, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
Carthage, Karthāgō, -inis, *f.*
case, causa, -ae, *f.*
cast down, abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, iectum.
catch sight of, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, *m.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*; *or use the pl. of horseman*, eques, -itis, *m.*
cease, dēsinō, -ere, -sīvī *and* -sīī, -situm; dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.
celebrate, celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
censure, reprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.
certain, a, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *and adj.* quoddam.
certainly, profectō.

cesspool, ship's bilge, sentīna, -ae, *f.*
Cethegus, Cethēgus, -ī, *m.*
chain, vinculum, -ī, *n.*
change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
character (*kind*), genus, -eris, *n.*
charge, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with gen. of the charge.*
charm, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc.*
charming, iūcundus, -a, -um.
check (*stop*), prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; (*press back*), reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
chief, prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*
children (*of free parents*), līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*; (*general word*), puerī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
Chios, men of, Chiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
choose, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
circumstance, rēs, reī, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*
citizenship, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
city, urbs, -is, *f.*
civil, domesticus, -a, -um.
claim, vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
class, genus, -eris, *n.*
clear, manifēstus, -a, -um.
clearly, plānē; manifēstō.
client, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
Clusium, Clūsium, -ī, *n.*; **of Clusium,** Clūsīnus, -a, -um.
cold, frīgus, -oris, *n.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.
come into conflict, cōnflīgo, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *with* cum *and abl.*
come to, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *and acc. The prep. is omitted with names of towns,* domus, *etc.*
come together, conveniō, -īre, -venī, ventum.
come to pass, fīō, fierī, factus sum, *with* ut *and subj.*
coming, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
comitium, comitium, -i, *n.*
command (*verb*), iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, *with acc. and inf.*; imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat. and* ut *or* nē *with subj.*; (*noun*), imperium, -ī, *n.*; **by command** iussū, *abl. m.*
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*; dux, ducis, *m.*
commendation, laus, laudis, *f.*
commit (*of crimes*), concipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; (*intrust*), trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *with dat.*
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
companion, comes, -itis, *m.*
compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.
competent, idōneus, -a, -um, *with* quī *and subj.*
complain, queror, -ī, questus sum, *with acc. and inf., or with a* quod-*clause.*
complete, cōnficiō *and* perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
comprehend, percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
comrade, socius, -ī, *m.*
conceal, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*keep from escaping*), contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
concerns, it, interest *or* rēfert *with gen. of the person concerned, or, if that be a personal pronoun, with the abl. sing. fem. of the corresponding possessive.*
concern, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
concerning, dē, *with abl.*
concession, venia, -ae, *f.*
condition, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
conduct, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **conduct oneself,** mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
confess, fateor, -ērī, -fassus sum; cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum. *Use the form* confessus *rather than the less common* fassus.
conflagration, incendium, -ī, *n.*
conflicting, contrārius, -a, -um.
consciousness, sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
consider (*contemplate*), cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*deem*), habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, ductum; (*reckon*), exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
conspirator, coniūrātus, -ī, *m.*
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*
contain, contineo, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

contemplate (*aim at*), quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
contend, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
contrary to expectation, praeter opīniōnem.
conversation, sermō, -ōnis, *m.*
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*
corps, manus, -ūs, *f.*
correctly, rēctē.
counsel, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
count, ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
country (*native land*), patria, -ae, *f.*; (*politically considered*), rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*; (*rural districts*), rūs, rūris, *n.*; (*countryside*), *pl. of* ager, agrī, *m.*
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
courageous, fortis, -e.
courageously, fortiter.
covet (*in good sense*), expetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
covetous, avidus, -a, -um.
covetousness, cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*
cowardly, timidus, -a, -um.
create, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
creditable, honestus, -a, -um.
crime, scelus, -eris, *n.*
crisis, discrīmen, -inis, *n.*
cruel, crūdēlis, -e.
cruelly, crūdēliter.
cruelty, crūdēlitās, -ātis, *f.*
crush, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
cry, cry out, clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
cultivation, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*; cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
cut off, interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.
cut to pieces, occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.

daily, cotīdiē.
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
daring (*adj.*), audāx, -ācis; (*noun*), audācia, -ae, *f.*
darkness, tenebrae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
dart, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
dawn, at, prīmā lūce.
day, dies, -ēī, *m. and f.; in pl. always m.*; **two days**, bīduum, -ī, *n*; **three days**, trīduum, -ī, *n.*
daybreak, at, *see* **at dawn.**
day by day, in diēs.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
debt, aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, *n.*
decide, decide on, statuō *and* cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *with inf.*
declare, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
declare guilty, damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with gen. of the crime.*
declare war, bellum indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *with dat.*
decree, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*; **deeds, exploits**, rēs gestae, *f. pl.*; **do deeds**, rēs gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
defense of, in, prō, *with abl.*
deem, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
deep (*adv.*), penitus.
defeat, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *with* ab *and abl. of the danger.*
defenses, moenia, -ium, *n. pl.* [-ātum.
delay (*trans.*), retardō, -āre, -āvī,
deliberate, dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
deliberation, dēlīberātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
deliberative body, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
delight, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc.*
delightful, dulcis, -e; iūcundus, -a, -um.
deliver *or* **make a speech**, ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
deliverance, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
demand (*as a right*), postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*request*), poscō, -ere, poposcī; (*issue injunctions to*), imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat. of person and acc. of thing demanded.*
deny, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
depraved, perditus, -a, -um.
deprive, prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with abl. of the thing of which one is deprived.*
descended, ortus, -a, -um, *with* ab *and abl.*
desert, dēserō, -ere, -uī, dēsertum.
deserts, meritum, -ī, *n.*

deserve, mereor, -ērī, -itus sum, *and* mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; dignus esse *with abl. or* quī *and subj.*; dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with inf.*
deserving, deserving of, dignus, -a, -um, *with abl. or* quī *and subj.; or express by the 2d periphr.*
design, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
desire (*verb*), (*choose*), optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*wish for*), cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; (*seek after*), expetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; (*noun*), (*longing*), cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*; (*eagerness*), studium, -ī, *n.*
desire a revolution, novīs rēbus studeō, -ēre, -uī.
despair of, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc., or* dē *and abl.*
desperate (*ruined*), perditus, -a, -um.
despise, contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum.
destroy (*in any manner*), dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum; (*cut or break down*), rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum.
destruction, exitium, -ī, *n.*
detect, dēprehendō, -ere, -prehendi, -prehēnsum.
deter, dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
determine, statuō *and* cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
detestation, odium, ī, *n.*
devastate, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
devoid of hope, dēspērātus, -a, -um.
devote (*apply*), cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc.*; (*give up to*), trānsmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *with dat.*; (*devote oneself to something*), sē ad aliquid cōnferre.
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum.
different, alius, -a, -ud.
differently from, aliter atque (ac).
dignity, dignitās, -atis, *f.*
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
diligently, dīligenter.
direction (*quarter*), pars, partis, *f.*
disagree with, dissentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *with* ab *and abl.*
disagreement, dissēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
disaster, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*
discern, cernō, -ere, crēvī, certum.
discourage, dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
discover, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.
discuss with, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *with* cum *and abl.*
disguise, dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
display, iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
displeasing, invīsus, -a, -um.
dissemble, dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
dissent, dissentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum.
distinction, honōs *and* honor, -ōris, *m.*
distinguished, clārus, -a, -um; inlūstris, -e; nōbilis, -e.
disturb, moveō *and* commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
disturbance, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*
dispute (*quarrel*), concertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
divulge, ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
do, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum; faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **do deeds**, rēs gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
do good, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *with dat.*
do harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
domain, dominion, imperium, -ī, *n.*
doom (*fate*), fātum, -ī, *n.*
doubt, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
doubt (there is no doubt that), nōn est dubium, nēminī est dubium, *with* quīn *and subj.*
down stream, secundō flūmine.
drag, trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum.
draw nearer, propius accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
draw out, exhauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustum.
dread (*verb*), (*of simple fear*), timeō, -ēre, -uī; (*of apprehensive fear*), metuō, -ere, -uī; (*noun*), formīdō, -inis, *f*; metus, -ūs, *m.*
drink, bibō, -ere, bibī.
drive, drive from, ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *with* ex *and abl.*
during, per, *with acc.*; dē, *with abl., in such phrases as* dē tertiā vigiliā.
dwelling, tēctum, -i, *n.*

each (*of two*), uterque, -traque, -trumque; (*of more than two*), quisque, quaeque, quidque, *and adj.* quodque.

eager, cupidus, -a, -um.
eagerly, studiōsē.
eagerness, studium, -ī, *n.*
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.*
ear, auris, -is, *f.*
earlier, superior, -ius; prior, -ius.
early (*adj.*), prīstinus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), mātūrē.
early spring, in, ineunte vēre.
earth, terra, -ae, *f.*
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
effort, labor, -ōris, *m.*
eight, octō, *indecl.*
either . . . or, aut . . . aut; vel . . . vel. *The latter shows that the choice is a matter of indifference.*
elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
eligible, idōneus, -a, -um, *with* quī *and subj.*
else, alius, -a, -ud.
embassy (*office of ambassador*), lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
emergency, tempus, -oris, *n.*
employ, ūtor, -ī, -ūsus sum.
empty, vacuus, -a, -um.
end (*of the successful completion of a war*), cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*; **end of**, extrēmus, -a, -um, *in agreement with the word which the expression limits.*
endure, perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
enemy (*public*), hostis, -is, *m., reg. pl. when used in the collective sense*; (*private*), inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
engage, engage in conflict, cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *with* cum *and abl.*
enjoin, praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *with dat.*
enjoy, fruor, -ī, frūctus sum; ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *both with the abl.*
enjoying (*provided with*), praeditus, -a, -um, *with abl.*
enough, satis, *indecl.*
enrol (*of citizens*), ascrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum; (*of soldiers*), cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.
enter, enter into *or* **upon**, ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *with* in *and acc.*; (*undertake*), suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
enter on the lists, ascrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.
enthusiasm, studium, -ī, *n.*
entire, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um.
entirely, omnīnō.
entreaty, (prex, precis), *f. The abl. is the only sing. form in common use.*
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
envy (*verb*), invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *with dat.*; (*noun*), invidia, -ae, *f.*
equal, pār, paris.
equally, pariter.
escape (*both trans. and intrans.*), effugiō, -ere, fūgī; (*intrans.*) profugiō, -ere, -fūgī; (*shun*), vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
especially (*very greatly*), maximē; (*particularly*), praesertim; (*chiefly*), praecipuē.
establish, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
esteem (*verb*), dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum; (*noun*), laus, laudis, *f.*
estimate, cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsum.
Etruscan, Etruscus, -a, -um.
eulogize, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
even, etiam; *and even*, atque etiam; (*all the way*) usque.
even if, etiam sī.
evening, vesper, -ī, m.; *towards evening*, sub vesperum.
ever, umquam (*espec. in neg., interrog., and conditional clauses*); aliquandō.
every (*each*), quisque, quaeque, quidque, *and adj.* quodque; (*all*) omnis, -e; *everything*, omnia.
everywhere, ubīque.
evidence, testimōnium, -ī, *n.*
evil, malus, -a, -um.
exceedingly, vehementer, *or use superl.*
excellent, optimus, -a, -um.
except (*prep.*), praeter, *with acc.*; (*conj., lit.* "*unless*"), nisi.
execute (*kill*), interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; (*perform*), praestō, -āre, -stiti, -stātum.
exercise, exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
exercise authority, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
exercise a certain degree of re-

straint, modum quendam adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
exert, exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
exist, exsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum; sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
exhausted, cōnfectus, -a, -um.
exile (*person exiled*), exsul, -ulis, *m.*; (*condition or place of exile*), exsilium, -ī, *n.*
expect, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
experience (*verb*), fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, *with abl.*; (*noun*), exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
experienced, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
explain, verbīs expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum; *or* expōnō *alone.*
expression, vultus, -ūs, *m.*
extraordinary, eximius, -a, -um.
exult, exsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*

face, ōs, ōris, *n.*
fact, rēs, reī, *f.*
Faesulae, Faesulae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
fail, fail in one's duty, dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*
faithfully, dīligenter.
fall, occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum.
fall from, excidō, -ere, -cidī, *with* dē *and abl.*
false, falsus, -a, -um.
fame, fāma, -ae, *f.*
far, longē.
farm (*of collecting taxes*), exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
farthest, ultimus, -a, -um.
farthest limit of, extrēmus, -a, -um, *in agreement with the word which the expression limits.*
fasten together, iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, iūnctum.
father, pater, patris, *m.*
fault, culpa, -ae, *f.*; vitium, -ī. *n.*
favor (*verb*), faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, *with dat.*; (*noun*), beneficium, -ī, *n.*
favored, adfectus, -a, -um, *with abl.*
fear (*verb*), (*be afraid of*), timeō, -ēre, -uī; (*fear greatly*), pertimēscō, -ere, -timuī; (*dread*), metuō, -ere, -uī.
fear (*noun*), (*state of fear*), timor, -ōris, *m.*; (*dread, apprehension*), metus, -ūs, *m.*
feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.
feel grateful, feel gratitude, grātiam habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
feeling, sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
feel the need of, dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
feign, simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
fellow, homō, -inis, *m.*
fellow-citizen, my, your, his, *etc.*, cīvis meus, tuus, suus, *etc.*
few, only a few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fiercely, ācriter.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fiftieth, quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um.
fight (*verb*), pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum; cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum; (*noun*), pugna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, -ī, *n.*
Figulus, Figulus, -ī, *m.*
finally, dēnique.
find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum; **find out**, cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.
fire, ignis, -is, *m.*; **with fire and sword**, ignī ferrōque.
firebrand, fax, facis, *f.*
first (*adj.*), prīmus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), prīmum; **at first**, prīmō; **first . . . then**, prīmum . . . deinde; **be the first to**, *use* prīmus *in agreement with the subject of the verb; as,* "*they were the first to come,*" prīmī vēnērunt (*not* "*prīmī erant venīre*").
fit, idōneus, -a, -um, *with* quī *and subj.*
five, quīnque, *indecl.*
flat, plānus, -a, -um.
flattering (*complimentary*), praeclārus, -a, -um.
flaunt, iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī.
flee for refuge, cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī.
fleet, classis, -is, *f.*
floundering, impedītus, -a, -um.
foe (*public*), hostis, -is, *m.*; *when used in the collective sense, reg. pl. in Latin;* (*private*), inīmicus, -ī, *m.*

follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.
folly, stultitia, -ae, *f.*
food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
for (*conj.*), nam; enim, *postpos.*; etenim; (*prep.*), (*in behalf or defense of*), prō, *with abl.*; (*to designate the aim*), ad, *with acc.*; (*of the person interested or benefited*), *use the dat.*; (*of the place whither*), in *or* ad *with acc.*
for a long time now, iam prīdem. *With this expression a present tense has the force of an English perfect, and an imperfect that of a pluperfect.*
forbid, vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *with inf.*
force (*verb*), cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, *with inf.*; (*noun*), (*protective force*), praesidium, -ī, *n.*; (*power, violence*), vīs, vis, *f.*
force out of, ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *with* ex *and abl.*
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl. For the sing. use* praesidium, manus, *etc.*
forefathers, maiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*
foreign, exterus, -a, -um.
foresee, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum.
forget, be forgetful of, oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, *with gen. or acc.*
forgive, īgnōscō, -ere, īgnōvī, īgnōtum, *with dat.*
form an opinion, iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
form a plan, cōnsilium capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
former, superior, -ius; **the former . . . the latter**, ille . . . hīc.
formerly, anteā; ōlim; quondam.
for my part, quidem, *postpos.*
forsooth, scīlicet; vidēlicet.
for such time as, tam diū dum.
for the future, in reliquum tempus.
for the purpose of, for the sake of, causā, *preceded by the gen. of the thing aimed at.*
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fortunate, fēlīx, -īcis.
fortunately, fēlīciter.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*; **fortunes** (*property*), rēs, rērum, *f. pl.*
forty-nine, ūndēquīnquāgintā.
forty-ninth, ūndēquīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um.
Forum, forum, -ī, *n.*
found, condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
four, quattuor, *indecl.*
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
free (*verb*), līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. and abl.*; (*adj.*), līber, -era, -erum, *with abl. But of persons, use* ab *with the abl. with both* līber *and* līberō.
freely, līberē.
frequented, celeber, -bra, -brum.
fresh, novus, -a, -um.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
from, ab, ex, dē, *with the abl.*; *simple abl., etc.*
from a distance, procul.
from every quarter, undique.
from here, hinc.
fugitive slave, fugitīvus, -ī, *m.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
full meeting of the senate, senātus frequentissimus.
further, furthermore, praetereā.
future, the, reliqua, -ōrum, *n. pl.*; **for the future**, in reliquum tempus.

Gabinius, Gabīnius, -ī, *m.*
gain, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum; **gain (a request)**, impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **gain possession of**, pōtior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *with abl.*
Gaius, Gāius, -ī, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather (*meet*), conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; (*collect*), conligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
Gaul (*the country*), Gallia, -ae, *f.*; (*inhabitant of Gaul*), Gallus, ī, *m.*
gaze upon, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*; dux, ducis, *m.*
general's authority, imperium, -ī, *n.*
genius, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
gentle, lēnis, -e.
George, Georgius, -ī, *m.*
German, Germānus, -ī, *m.*

get (*gain*), cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum; (*procure*), parō *and* comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
get out of the way, dē mediō tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
get ready, comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
give chase to, persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
give pleasure to, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
give up, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
gladly, libenter.
glorify, ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
glorious, praeclārus, -a, -um.
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*; laus, laudis, *f.*
go, eō, īre, iī, -itum; proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum.
go back, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
god, deus, -i, *m.*
go forth, excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
go from, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
go in, ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
good-bye, *imperative of* valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
good counsel, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
good fortune, good luck, fortūna, -ae, *f.*; fēlīcitās, -ātis, *f.*
good sense, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
go on (*of events*), *passive of* gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
go out, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
gladiator, gladiātor, -ōris, *m.*
govern, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.
government, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
grandfather, avus, -ī, *m.*
grant, tribuō, -erē, -uī, -ūtum.
granted that, licet, *with subj; or subj. alone.*
great, magnus, -a, -um.
greatest, great (*of eminence*), summus, -a, -um.
greatly, magnoperē; *with* interest, rēfert, *etc., to denote the degree of concern,* magnī.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
greed, avāritia, -ae, *f.*
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
grumble, queror, -ī, questus sum.
guarantee, praestō, -āre, -stitī, stātum.
guard (*verb*), (*watch over*), custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; (*keep safe*), servō, -āre, āvī, -ātum; (*noun*), (*guardian*), custōs, -ōdis, *m*; (*protective force*) praesidium, -ī, *n.*
guilty conscience, cōnscientia scelerum.

hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
hand over, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *with acc. and dat.*
handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
happen (*come to pass*), fīō, fierī, factus sum; **it happens,** *3d sing. of* contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *or* accidō, -ere, -cidī, *with* ut *and subj.* Accidit *is more often used of unfortunate, and* contingit *of fortunate occurrences, but the distinction is not strictly observed;* **happen to** (*become of*), fīō, -ere, factus sum, *with abl. of the person.*
happy (*fortunate*), fēlīx, -īcis.
hard, difficilis, -e.
harangue, cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
harm (*verb*), noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.;* (*noun*), dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*
hate (*verb*), ōdī, ōdisse; *fo. the passive, use* in odiō esse *with* apud *and acc.;* (*noun*), odium, -ī, *n.*
hateful, invīsus, -a, -um.
hatred, *see* **hate.**
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; *or use the dat. of poss.;* **have anything done,** cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with gerundive in agreement with the object.*
have many conversations with, saepe loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *with* cum *and abl.*
have more power, plūs valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
have no share in, expers esse, *with gen.*
he, ille, -a, -ud; hīc, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
health, valētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
heap, acervus, -ī, *m.*

hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
hearth, focus, -ī, *m.*
heaven, caelum, -ī, *n.*
help (*verb*), (*stand by*), adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*; (*help in any way*), iuvō *and* adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *with acc.*; (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, *n.*
hence, hinc.
Heraclia, Hērāclīa *or* Hērāclēa, -ae, *f.*
Heracliot, Heraclian, Hērāclīensis *or* Hērāclēēnsis, -is, *m.*
here (*in this place*), hīc; (*to this place, hither*), hūc.
here and there in, per, *with acc.*
hesitate, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with inf.*
high character, pudor, -ōris, *m.*
highest (*of degree*), summus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
hillock, tumulus, -ī, *m.*
himself (*reflexive*), suī (*gen.*); (*intensive*), ipse, -a, -um.
hinder, impedio, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *with* nē, quō minus, *or* quīn, *and sūbj.*
his, her, its, their (*referring to the subject*), suus, -a, -um; (*not referring to the subject*), *gen. of* hīc, is, *or* ille,
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī; (*believe*), dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
hold an opinion, iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hold supreme control, summās imperī teneō, -ēre, -uī.
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; **at home**, domī; **home, homeward**, domum; domōs.
Homer, Homērus, -ī, *m.*
honor (*verb*), (*praise*), laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*honor with*), adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with abl.*; (*noun*), (*distinction*), honōs *and* honor, -ōris, *m.*; (*eulogy, act meriting praise*), laus, laudis, *f.*
honorable, honestus, -a, -um; amplus, -a, -um.
honorably, honestē.
hope (*verb*), spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*noun*), spēs, spei, *f.*
Horatius Cocles, Horātius Cocles, Horātī Coclitis, *m.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.*
hostile, īnfēstus, -a, -um.
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -us, *f.*
household, familia, -ae, *f.*
how (*with adjs. and advs.*), quam; (*with verbs*), quem ad modum; quō modō; quā ratiōne; quō pactō.
however (*adv.*), quamvīs; (*conj.*), vērō; autem, *both postpos.*
however much, quamvīs.
how great, how important, quantus, -a, -um.
how many, quot, *indecl.*
how many times, quotiēns.
how much, quantus, -a, -um.
how numerous, quot, *indecl.*
how often, quotiēns.
human being, homō, -inis, *m. and f.*
humanity, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
hunger, famēs, -is, *f.*
hurl, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.

I, ego, meī.
Ides, Īdūs, -uum, *f. pl.*
if, sī; (*in indirect questions*), num; -ne; *but after* cōnor *in the sense* "*try to see if*," and exspectō *in the sense* "*wait to see if*," sī *is used*; **if not**, *to negative an entire expression*, nisi; *otherwise*, sī . . . nōn.
if only (*provided that*), dum; modo; dum modo, *with subj.*
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.
ill will, invidia, -ae, *f.*
imagine, opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
immediately, statim.
immense, maximus, -a, -um.
immortal, immortālis, -e.
impel, addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *with* ut *and subj.*; (exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum). *This refers to a particular phrase, to which the Special Vocabulary furnishes a guide.*
in (*of place or circumstance*), in, *with abl.*; (*of pure time*), *use the abl.*
in accordance with, *use the abl.*
in a panic, perterritus, -a, -um.
inasmuch as, quoniam, *with indic.*
in behalf of, prō, *with abl.*

inclination, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*; studium, -ī, *n.*
in comparison with, prae, *with abl.*
in consequence, quō factum est, *with* ut *and subj.*
inconvenience, impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*
incorrigible, perditus, -a, -um.
increase (*intrans.*), crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum; (*trans.*), augeō, -ēre, -auxī, auctum.
incur, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
in defense of, prō, *with abl.*
indifferent, dūrus, -a, -um.
induce, addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *with* ut *and subj.*
indulgence, venia, -ae, *f.*
industrious, labōriōsus, -a, -um.
Indutiomarus, Indutiomarus, -ī, *m.*
in early spring, ineunte vēre.
in early youth, prīmā adulēscentiā.
inevitable, necesse, *indecl.*
in fact, vērō.
infamous, nefārius, -a, -um.
influence, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
influential, gravis, -e.
inform, certiorem (-ēs) facio, -ere, fēcī, factum.
in front, adversus, -a, -um.
in harmony with, proprius, -a, -um, *with gen.*; prō, *with abl.*
injure, noceō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
innocent, innocēns, -entis.
in no way, in no wise, nūllō pactō; nūllō modo.
inquire, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
in recent years, per hōs (hōsce) annōs.
insane, mente captus, -a, -um.
insist, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
instigate, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *with* ut *and subj.*
instruct, praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *with dat.*
instruction (*precepts*), praecepta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
insurrection, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*
integrity, innocentia, -ae, *f.*
intend, *use 1st periphr., or* mihi, *etc.* in animō est, *or* in animō habeō, *with inf.*
interest, studium, -ī, *n*; **it is to one's interest,** interest *or* rēfert *with inf., and gen. of the person interested; or, if this would be a pers. pron., with the abl. sing. fem. of the corresponding possessive.*
interpose, obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *with acc. and dat.*
in the consulship of, *use the abl. abs.*: *e.g.*, **in the consulship of Cicero,** Cicerōne cōnsule.
in the eyes of, *use the dat. of ref.*
in the name of the state, pūblicē.
in the open, palam.
in the presence of, apud, *with acc.*
intimate friend, familiārissimus, -a, -um.
into, in, *with acc.*
intrust, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *with dat. and acc.*
iron, ferrum, -ī, *n.*
isolate, sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, *f.*
it is a well-authenticated fact, it is certain, satis cōnstat.
it is my, *etc.*, **duty,** dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; oportet, ēre, -uit, *impers.; or express by the 2d periphr., or by a possessive limiting an inf.*
it is permissible, licet, -ēre, -uit *and* licitum est, *impers.*
it is true, vērum est, *with* ut *and subj.*; (*parenthetical*, = "*indeed*") quidem, *postpos.*
it makes no difference, nihil interest, *with inf.*
it remains that, reliquum est, *with* ut *and subj.*

Janiculum, Iāniculum, ī, *n.*
jaws, faucēs, -ium, *f. pl.*
join, adiungo, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *with acc. and dat.*
join battle, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
joy, laetitia, -ae, *f.*
judge (*verb*), iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*noun*), iūdex, -icis, *m.*
Julia, Iūlia, -ae, *f.*
jump down, dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultum.
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*

juror, iūdex, -dicis, *m.*
just, iūstus, -a, -um.
just as, aeque ac; sīc ut.
just at the critical moment, ad ipsum discrīmen.
justice, iūstitia, -ae, *f.*
justly, iūstē; iūre.

Kalends, Kalendae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.
keep, teneō, -ere, -uī.
keep off, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
keep safe, servō *and* cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
keep secret (*keep in*), contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
keep silent, taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
killing, caedēs, -is, *f.*
kind, genus, -eris, *n.*
kindness, officium, -ī, *n*; beneficium, -ī, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingly, rēgius, -a, -um.
knight, eques, -itis, *m.*
know, sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; *perf. of* cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum; **not know**, nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*

lack, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with abl.*
labor, labor, -ōris, *m.*
Laeca, Laeca, -ae, *m.*
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
land (*field, territory*), ager, agrī, *m.*; (*geographical division*), terra, -ae, *f.*; **on land and sea**, terrā marīque.
large, magnus, -a, -um.
Lars Porsena, Lars Porsena, Lartis Porsenae, *m.*
last (*verb*), permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum; (*adj.*), ūltimus, -a, -um.
lasting, firmus, -a, -um.
lastly, postrēmō.
late, sērō; **late at night**, multā nocte.
lately, nūper.
latter, the, hīc, haec, hoc.
laugh, rīdeo, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum.
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lay all responsibility, omnia tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *with dat.*
lay, lay away, mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. and dat.*; (*place*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, *with* in *and abl.*
lay before, referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, *with* ad *and acc.*
lay siege to, oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lay violent hands on, vim et manūs īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with dat.*
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
lead across, trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *with two accs.*
lead back, redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*; (*political*), prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*
league, societās, -ātis, *f.*
learn, learn of (*become aware*), cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum; (*learn, as a scholar*), discō, -ere, didicī.
learned, doctus, -a, -um; ērudītus, -a, -um.
learning, doctrīna, -ae, *f.*
least, minimē; **at least**, quidem, *postpos.*
leave (*go away from*), exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *with* ex *or* dē *and abl.*; discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with* ab *or* ex *and abl.*; (*set out*), proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum; (*abandon*), relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.
leave unharmed, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
leisure, ōtium, -ī, *n.*
leniency, lēnitās, -ātis, *f.*
Lentulus, Lentulus, -ī, *m.*
less (*adv.*), minus.
lest, nē, *with subj.*
let fly, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
let go, dīmittō *and* ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
letter (*of the alphabet*), littera, -ae, *f.*; (*epistle*), *pl. of the foregoing, or* epistula, -ae, *f.*
liberty, lībertās, -ātis, *f.*
lie, iaceō, -ēre, -uī.

lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
lifetime, aetās, -ātis, *f.*
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*; (*source of light, artificial light*), lūmen, -inis, *n.*
lightly, leviter.
like, similis, -e, *with dat. or* (*of living beings*), *gen.*
likewise, item.
limit, fīnis, -is, *m.*
Lincoln, Lincolnus, -ī, *m.*
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
literary pursuits, scrībendī studium.
little, a (*to a small extent*), paulum; (*with comparatives*), paulō.
live, vīvō, -ere, vīxī.
living, vīvus, -a, -um.
locality, *pl. of* regiō, -ōnis, *f.*; locus, -ī, *m.*
long (*adj.*), longus, -a, -um; (*adv. of time*), diū.
long ago, iam anteā.
long since, iam prīdem.
look back upon, respiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
look into (*examine*), cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.
look out for the interests *or* **welfare of,** cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultum, *with dat.*
look to it, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *with* ut *and subj.*
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,
love (*verb*), amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*of friendship*), dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum; (*noun*), amor, -ōris, *m.*
Lucius, Lūcius, -ī, *m.*
Lucullus, Lucullus, -ī, *m.*

maddened, furēns, -entis.
madness, āmentia, -ae, *f.*; furor, -ōris, *m.*
magistracy, magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
maintain (*be responsible for a condition*), praestō, -āre, -stiti, -stātum.
majesty, dignitās, -ātis, *f.*
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; (*of delivering a speech*), habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; **make one do anything,** faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, *with* ut *and subj.*
make an attack on, impetum faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, *with* in *and acc.*
make arrangements, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
make it possible, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with* ut *and subj. of* possum.
make requisition for, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat. of the person and acc. of the thing.*
make sure, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* ut *and subj.*
make the mistake of, committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *with* ut *and subj.*
make up one's mind, statuō *and* cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
make war, bellum īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with dat.*
man (*human being*), homō, -inis, *m. and f.*; (*male*), vir, virī, *m.*
Manlius, Manlius, -ī, *m.*; **Manlius', of Manlius,** Manliānus, -a, -um.
manner, modus, -ī, *m.*
many, multī, -ae, -a.
Marcellus, Mārcellus, -ae, *m.*
march, iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
massacre, caedēs, -is, *f.*
matter, rēs, reī, *f.*
may, licet, -ēre, -uit *and* licitum est, *impers.*
means, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
mean-spirited, parvī animī.
measure (*design*), cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
meditate, cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
meet, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* in *and acc. of the place of meeting.*
meeting, concilium, -ī, *n.*
men of Chios, Chiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
mental ability, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
mental cultivation, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
mention, commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
mercy, venia, -ae, *f.*
merely, tantum.
method, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
middle of, medius, -a, -um, *in agreement with the word described.*
midnight, media nox, mediae noctis, *f.*
mild, lēnis, -e.

mile, mīlle passūs; *pl.* mīlia passuum.
mind, animus, -ī, *m.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*; **mind and soul**, animus mēnsque.
mine, meus, -a, -um.
mischief, maleficium, -ī, *n.*
misfortune, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*; malum, -ī, *n.*
miss, dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
missile, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
Mithridates, Mithridātēs *or* Mithradātēs, -is, *m.*
mix, misceō, -ēre, -uī, mixtum.
modesty, pudor, -ōris, *m.*
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
monument, monumentum, -ī, *n.*
moral excellence, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
more (*adv.*), magis; amplius; plūs; (*subst.*), plūs, plūris, *n.*; (*adj.*), *pl. of* plūs, plūris.
more important, plūris, *gen.*
moreover, autem, *postpos.*
most assuredly, sānē.
most madly, summō furōre.
mother, māter, mātris, *f.*
mouth (*of a river*), ōstium, -ī, *n.*
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
move from, dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* ex *or* dē *and abl.*
movement, mōtus, -ūs, *m.*
much (*adj.*), multus, -a, -um; (*adv. of extent*), multum; (*with comparatives*), multō.
murder (*verb*), interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*noun*), caedēs, -is, *f.*
must needs, necesse est.
my, meus, -a, -um.

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
narrow, exiguus, -a, -um.
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*; populus, -ī, *m.*
native land, patria, -ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
naval, maritimus, -a, -um.
nay even, immō vērō.
nearer, propior, -ius, *sup.* proximus, -a, -um; **Nearer Gaul**, Gallia citerior, Galliae citeriōris, *f.*
nearly, paene; ferē.
necessary, necesse, *indecl.*
need, opus, *n. indecl.*; **there is need of, one has need of**, opus est, *with abl. of thing needed and dat. of person in need. The thing needed is sometimes made the subject of the verb, particularly when it is expressed by a neuter pronoun.*
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque; nec . . . nec. *Before a vowel use the form* neque; *before a consonant, either one.*
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next (*adj.*), proximus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), deinde.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
nine, novem, *indecl.*
ninety, nōnāgintā, *indecl.*
no, nūllus, -a, -um.
noble, nōbilis, -e; amplus, -a, -um.
no longer, nōn iam.
nobody, nēmō (nēminis). *Instead of the gen. and abl. sing. of* nēmō, nūllīus *and* nūllō *must be used.*
nocturnal, nocturnus, -a, -um.
none, nūllus, -a, -um; *see also* **nobody.**
Nones, Nōnae, -arum, *f. pl.*
no one, *see* **nobody.**
nor, neque; nec. *Before a vowel use* neque; *before a consonant, either one.*
not, nōn; **not at all**, minimē; **not even**, nē . . . quidem, *separated by the emphatic word.*
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
not know, nesciō, -īre, -īvī, ītum; īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
not only . . . but also (even), non { modo / sōlum } . . . { sed / vērum } etiam.
not to say more, ut plūra nōn dīcam.
not wish, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
notwithstanding (*although*), tametsī; (*nevertheless*), tamen.
not yet, nōndum.
now (*to express culmination of events*), iam; (*absolutely*), nunc.
nowhere, nusquam.
now if, quod sī.
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

obedient, audiēns dictō, *with dat.*
obey, pareō, -ēre, -uī, *with dat.*

object, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* nē, quō minus, *or* quīn, *and subj.*
observe, cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum; percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *with or without* animō *or* animīs.
obtain, impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; adipiscor, -ī, adeptus sum; cōnsequor, -ī, secutus sum.
occasion, tempus, -oris, *n.*
of (*concerning*), dē, *with abl.*
of consular rank, cōnsulāris, -e.
offer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum; prōmittō, -ere, mīsī, -missum.
office (*political*), honōs *and* honor, -ōris, *m.*
official, pūblicus, -a, -um.
off one's guard, inopīnāns, -antis.
of great importance, magnī, *gen.*
of high principle, rēbus optimīs īnstitūtus, -a, -um.
of more importance, plūris, *gen.*
of one's own accord, ultrō; meā, tuā, *etc.*, sponte.
often, saepe.
of this kind, huius modī; eius modī; -tālis, -e.
of yourselves, ipsī per vōs.
oh, ō.
old, vetus, -eris; **older** (*of persons*), maior nātū.
old age, senectūs, -ūtis, *f.*
old man, senex, senis, *m.*
omit, praetermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
on account of, ob *or* propter, *with acc.; abl. of cause;* (*with a view to*), causā FOLLOWING *a gen.*
on account of which thing, quam ob rem; quā dē causā.
once, ōlim; quondam; (*mathematically*), semel.
one, ūnus, -a, -um.
one at a time, singulī, -ae, -a.
on guard, in statiōne.
on land and sea, terrā marīque.
only, the only one (*adj.*), sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), tantum; sōlum.
onslaught, impetus, ūs, *m.*
on the one hand . . . (and) on the other, cum . . . tum.
open (*verb*), patefaciō, -ēre, -fēcī, -factum; aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum; (*adj.*), apertus, -a, -um.
opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*; **in my**, *etc.*, **opinion**, meā, *etc.*, sententiā.
opportunity, potestās, -ātis, *f.*
or, aut; (*implying indifference as to the alternative*, vel; (*in alternative questions*), an.
ordain, praescrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum.
Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*
original, prīstinus, -a, -um.
ornament, ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.*
or not (*in direct questions*), annōn; (*in indirect questions*), necne.
O that, utinam; *neg.* nē *and* utinam nē.
other (*another, some other*), alius, -a, -ud; (*the other of two*), alter, -era, -erum; (*the remaining, the rest*), (cēterus), -a, -um (*nom. sing. m. not in use*); reliquus, -a, -um.
otherwise, aliter.
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers.; 2d periphr.*
our, ours, our own, noster, -tra, -trum.
outrage, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
outstrip, excellō, -ere (——), -celsum.
overhear, exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
overpower, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
overthrow, ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
overwhelm, premō *and* opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
own (*of permanent possession*), proprius, -a, -um; (*emphatic*), *use the poss. pron. with or without the gen. of* ipse.

pacify, pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
pain, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
pardon, īgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum, *with dat.*
parent, parēns, -entis, *m. and f.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*; **parts** (*locality*), *pl. of* regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
particularly, maximē; praecipuē.

pass over, praetermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
past, superior, -ius; **the past**, praeterita, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
patriotic, patriae amāns, -antis;
patriots (*supporters of the constitution*), bonī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
patrol, vigilia, -ae, *f.*
pay, pendo, -ere, pependī, pēnsum.
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
penalty, poena, -ae, *f.*; (*particularly of the death penalty*), supplicium, -ī, *n.*
penetrate, penetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
people (*nation*), populus, -ī, *m.*; (*persons*), *pl. of* homō, -inis, *m.*
perceive (*by the senses*), sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum; (*grasp mentally*), percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; (*distinguish*), cernō, -ere, crēvī, certum.
perform (*be engaged in*), fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, *with abl.*; (*do thoroughly*), perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
perhaps, fortasse.
peril, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
perilous, perīculōsus, -a, -um; (*destructive*), perniciōsus, -a, -um.
permanent, perpetuus, -a, -um.
permit, patior, -ī, passus sum; sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm, *both with inf.*
personality, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *with dat. and* ut *with subj.*
philosopher, sapiēns, -entis, *m.*
physical strength, *pl. of* vīs, vis, *f.*
pirate, praedō, ōnis, *m.*, *with or without* maritimus, -a, -um.
pitch camp, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
pitiable, miserandus, -a, -um.
place (*noun*), locus, -ī, *m.*; (*pl.* loca, -orum, *n.*, *of locality*: locī *means places in a book*); (*verb*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum; collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
place in charge *or* **command**, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with acc. of the person appointed and dat. of his charge.*
place of safety, tūtum, -ī, *n.*
plain, manifēstus, -a, -um.
plainly, manifēstō.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um.
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
pleasing, iūcundus, -a, -um.
pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*
plebs, plēbs, plēbis, *f.* [*with dat.*
plot against, īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus sum,
plunder, dīripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
politics, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
Pompey, Pompeius, -i, *m.*
Pons Sublicius, Pōns Sublicius, Pontis Sublicii, *m.*
populous, *see frequented.*
position of authority, imperium, -ī, *n.*
possess, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; sum *with dat. of poss.*; (*of qualities and personal attributes*), *use the abl. of place*, "in mē est," *etc., or express by the abl. or gen. of quality.*
possessed of, praeditus, -a, -um, *with abl.*
possession, possessiō, -ōnis, *f.*; **myself, yourself**, *etc.*, **and all my, your**, *etc.*, **possessions**, mē meaque omnia, tē tuaque omnia, *etc.*
possible, *paraphrase so as to use a form of* possum.
power (*military and supreme*), imperium, -ī, *n.*; (*general word*), potestās, -ātis, *f.*
powerful, potēns, -entis; (*in suitable contexts*), magnus, -a, -um.
powerfully, maximē.
powers (*bodily*), *pl. of* vīs, vis, *f.*
praetor, praetor, -ōris, *m.*
praise (*verb*), laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*noun*), laus, laudis, *f.*
pray, optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; precor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
predict, praedīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum.
prefer (*would rather*), mālō, mālle, mālui; (*prefer one thing to another*), anteferō *and* praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with acc. and dat.*
prepare, prepare for, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
present (*verb*), dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. and abl. or acc. and dat.*; offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum.

present (*noun*), mūnus, -eris, *n.*; dōnum, ī, *n.*
preserve, cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
president (*of a commonwealth*), cōnsul, -is, *m.*
press on, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
pretend, simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
prestige, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
prevent (*hinder*), impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *with* nē, quō minus, *or* quīn, *and subj.*; (*stop*), prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with inf.*
previously, anteā.
price, pretium, -ī, *n.*
principles, disciplīna, ae, *f.*
prison, carcer, -eris, *m.*
private, prīvātus, -a, -um.
private enemy, inimīcus, ī, *m.*
prize, praemium, -ī, *n.*
proclaim, praedicō, -āre, āvī, -ātum; (*in a hostile manner*), dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
procure, pariō, -ere, peperī, partum.
proffer, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc.*; offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, *with acc. and dat.*
profligate, perditus, -a, -um.
promise, polliceor, -ērī, -licitus sum; prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
pronounce (*say*), dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
pronounce guilty, damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
proof (*information*), indicium, -ī, *n.*
property, bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.*; **property and fortunes**, rēs ac fortūnae.
prostrate, prōstrātus, -a, -um.
protect (*by walls, etc.*), mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; (*defend*), dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *with* ab *and abl.*
protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
provide, comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum.
provide for, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *with dat.*; cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum, *with dat.*
provided, **provided that**, dum; modo; dum modo, *with subj.*
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
prowess, virtūs, -ūtus, *f.*
public foe, hostis, -is, *m.*, *generally in pl.*
public interests, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
publish (*of facts*), celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*of books*), ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
punish, poenās sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *with* dē *and abl. of the person funished*; suppliciō adficiō, -ere, -fecī, -fectum; **be punished**, poenās dō, dare, dedī, datum, *with dat. of the person to whom the penalty is paid.*
punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*; (*especially of the death penalty*), supplicium, -ī, *n.*
purpose (*verb*), statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum; (*noun*), mēns, mentis, *f.*; cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
pursue, persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum; **pursue studies**, artīs colō, -ere, -uī, cultum.
pursuit (*occupation*), studium, -ī, *n.*
put down, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
put in charge, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with acc. and dat.*
put into the hands of, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *with acc. and dat.*
put to death, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

qualities, artēs, -ium, *f. pl.*
quantity (*as "a quantity of" anything*), vīs, vis, *f.*
quickly, celeriter.
Quintus, Quīntus, -ī, *m.*
Quirites, Quirītēs, -ium, *m. pl.* (*nom. sing.* Quiris).

raise, efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum; tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum; (*stir up*), concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
rank, ōrdo, -dinis, *m.*
rashly, temerē.
rather, potius.
ravage, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reach (*arrive at*), perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *and acc.*; *with names of towns, etc.*, ad *is omitted.*

read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum; (*read aloud*), recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
realize (*perceive*), sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum; (*understand*), intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
really, vērē; vērō.
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
recall (*call back*), revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*recollect*), recordor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
reckless, audāx, -ācis.
reckon, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **reckon among**, ex eō numerō exīstimāre quī, *etc.*
recoil from, abhorreō, -ēre, -uī, *with* ab *and abl.*
recollection, memoria, -ae, *f.*
recommend, suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, suāsum, *with dat. and* ut *with the subj.*
recur, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
refinement, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
reflect on, cōnsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
refuse (*reject*), repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*say that . . . not*), recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* nē, quō minus, *or* quīn, *and subj.*
region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
register, profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum.
reign, rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reinforcement(s), subsidium, -ī, *n.*
rejoice, exsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
release, solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum.
relief (Ops), opis, *f.*; *the nom. sing. only founa as the name of the goddess of Plenty.*
relieve, levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
relying, frētus, -a, -um, *with abl.*
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
remember, meminī, -isse, *with gen. or acc.*; memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī.
remind, admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with* dē *and abl.*
render (*give*), tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum; (*make*), reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
renown, laus, laudis, *f.*
repent, paenitet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. of the person and gen. of the thing, or an inf.*
reply, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
report (*bring word*), nūntiō *and* renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*refer, as to the senate*), dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with* ad *and acc.*; (*noun*), rumor, -ōris, *m.*; nūntius, -ī, *n.*
representative, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
reproach, recūsō *and* incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
require (*demand*), requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum; (*need*), opus est, *with dat. of person needing and acc. of thing needed.*
rescue, ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.
reside (*be within*), īnsum, inesse, īnfuī, *with* in *and abl.*
residence (*legal*), domicilium, -ī, *n.*
resign (*give up*), concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī, *with dat.*
respect, laus, laudis, *f.*
responsibility, cūra, -ae, *f.*
rest, the, (cēterus), -a, -um (*nom. sing. m. not in use*); reliquus, -a, -um.
rest, requiēs, -ētis, *f.*
restore, restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
restrain, coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
retire, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum.
retreat (*flee*), fugiō, -ere, fūgī; tergum *and* terga vertō, -ere, vertī, vĕrsum; (*retire to a place*), sē recipere, *with* ad *and acc. of the place whither*; (*give way*), pedem referre; (*noun*), fuga, -ae, *f.*
return (*give back*), reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum; (*go or come back*), revertor, -ī, (*perf. tenses reg. active*, revertī, etc.), reversum.
revenue, vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*
reverence, colō, -ere, -uī, cultum.
revive, reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
reward, mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*; praemium, -ī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, *m.*
rich, locuplēs, -ētis; dives, -itis.
right (*noun*), iūs, iūris, *n.*; (*adv.*), rēctē.
rightly, iūre.
right on, usque.
risk, perīculum, -ī, *n.*

river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
rob, spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
robber, latrō, -ōnis, *m.*
robbery, latrōcinium, -ī, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
rout, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
ruin, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*; perniciēs, -ēī, *f.*
ruined, perditus, -a, -um.
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.
rumor, rumor, -ōris, *m.*
run away, fugō, -ere, fūgī.
rush out, ērumpō, -ere,-rūpī, -ruptum.

safe (*protected*), tūtus, -a, -um; (*uninjured*), incolumis, -e; (*without loss*), salvus, -a, -um.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
satisfaction (*joy*), laetitia, -ae, *f.*
save (*verb*), servō *and* cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
save (*except*), nisi (*conj.*); praeter (*prep. with acc.*).
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; say that . . . not, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*introducing a direct quotation*), inquam, inquis, inquit, inquiunt; as they say, ut aiunt.
scarcely, vix.
scoundrel, scelerātus, -ī, *m.*
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
second in command, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
secure, pariō, -ere, peperī, partum.
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
seek, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
seek after, expetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
seem, videor, -ērī, vīsus sum.
seize (*of places*), occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
self (*intensive and indir. reflex.*), ipse, -a, -um; (*reflexive only*), suī, sibi, sē *or* sēsē, sē *or* sēsē.
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
senate-house, cūria, -ae, *f.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*; *in pl. often* patrēs cōnscrīptī.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.
send greeting, salūtem dō, dare, dedī, datum, *often abbreviated*, S.D.
send on (*ahead*), praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
sense, sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
sense of shame, pudor, -ōris, *m.*
seriousness, gravitās, -ātis, *f.*
serve, serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *with dat.*
service, officium, -ī, *n.*
set forth (*explain*), expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum; doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum; (*go*), *see* set out.
set free, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with abl. With names of persons, use* ab *and abl.*
set on fire, incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum.
set out, set forth, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum.
seven, septem, *indecl.*
seven hundredth, septingēsimus, -a, -um.
seventieth, septuāgēsimus, -a, -um.
severe, gravis, -e.
severity, sevēritās, -ātis, *f.*
shame, pudor, -ōris, *m.*
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
short, brevis, -e.
should (*ought*), *2d periphr.*; dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*
shout (*verb*), clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*noun*), clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
show (*inform*), doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *with two accs.*; (*exhibit*), ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
show attentions to, show honor to, colō, -ere, -uī, cultum.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, *f.*
side with (*help*), adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *with acc.*; (*sympathize with*), sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *with* cum *and abl.*
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*
Silvanus, Silvānus, -ī, *m.*
silver (*noun*), argentum, -ī, *n.*; (*adj.*), argenteus, -a, -um.
since, cum, *with subj.*; quoniam, *with ind.* (*of an admitted reason*).
six, sex, *indecl.*
sixty, sexāgintā, *indecl.*
skilled, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*

slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*
slay, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
slight, exiguus, -a, -um.
slumber, somnus, -ī, *m.*
small, parvus, -a, -um.
so, tam; ita; sīc; *the last not with adjs. and advs.*
so great, so important, tantus, -a, -um.
soldier, miles, -itis, *m.*
so long in advance, tantō ante.
so many, tot, *indecl.*
so many times, totiēns.
some, aliquis, aliquid, *and adj.* aliquī, -qua, -quod; nōn nūllī, -ae, -a; quīdam, quaedam, quoddam; **some other**, alius, -a, -ud; **some . . . others**, aliī . . . aliī.
somewhat, *express by the comparative or by* satis *or* nōn nihil.
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*
so often, totiēns.
soon, mox.
so to speak, ut ita dīcam.
sound (*test*), temptō *and* tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
space, spatium, -ī, *n.*
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*
spare, parcō, -ere, perpecī, parsum, *with dat.*
speak, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; (*converse*), loquor, -ī, locutus sum, *with* cum *and abl.*
spear, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; **make a speech**, ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
spirit, animus, -ī, *m.*
spread abroad, celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
spring from, orior, -īrī, ortus sum, *with* ab *and abl.*
Spurius Lartius, Spurius Lartius, -ī, *m.*
stand, stō, -āre, stetī, statum.
stand between, intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with* inter *and acc.*
stand by (*help*), adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*
start, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum.
state (*verb*), praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; (*noun*), cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
statue, statua, -ae, *f.*
stay, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
stern, sevērus, -a, -um.
still (*nevertheless*), tamen; (*hitherto*), adhūc; (*even now*), etiam num; etiam.
stillness, silentium, -ī, *n.*
stock (*supply*), cōpia, -ae, *f.*; (*race*), genus, -eris, *n.*
stop, dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum; dēsinō, -ere, -siī, -situm.
stopping-place (*limit*), modus, -ī, *m.*
stranger, aliēnus, -ī, *m.*; īgnōtus, -ī, *m.*
strategy, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
strength, *pl. of* vīs, vis, *f.*
strengthen, fīrmō *and* cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
stripling, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*
strive for, expetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
strongly, vehementer.
struggle, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, *with* cum *and abl.*
study, studium, -ī, *n.*
stung (*agitated*), commōtus, -a, -um.
style, genus, -eris, *n.*
sufficient, satis, *indecl.*, *with gen.*
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
suppose, exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sure, certus, -a, -um.
surely, profectō; sānē.
surpassing, ēgregius, -a, -um.
surprising, mīrus, -a, -um.
surrender, dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
surround (*intrans.*), circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; (*trans.*), circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *with dat. and acc. or acc. and abl.*
survivors, eī quī supersunt.
suspicion, suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*
swamp, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*
sway (*actuate*), permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*
sympathize with, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *with* cum *and abl.*

tablet, tabula, -ae, *f.*
take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum; (*forcibly*), ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.
take back, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
take care of, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
take from, adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *with dat. of person deprived;* (*forcibly*), ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum; (*of persons*), dūcō *and* ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
take heart, rēbus meīs, tuīs, suīs, *etc.*, melius cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum.
take pains, operam dō, dare, dedī, datum, *with* ut *or* nē *and subj.*
take prisoner, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
take the place of, succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with dat.*
take the trouble, operam dō, dare, dedī, datum, *with* ut *or* nē *and subj.*
take thought for, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultum, *with dat.*
take to flight, tergum (*with pl. verb*, terga), vertō, -ere, vertī, versum; fugiō, -ere, fūgī.
take under the protection of the state, in fidem pūblicam recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
take upon oneself, mihi, tibi, sibi, *etc.*, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
talent, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
talk, loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *with* cum *and abl.*
Tarquin, Tarquinius, Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*
taunt, verbīs lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
tax, vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*
teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *with two accs.*
tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
tell of, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*; aedis, -is, *f.*
tend, pertineō, -ēre, -uī, *with* ad *and acc.*
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
terrify, terreō *and* perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
than, quam, *or abl. without* quam *when first word contrasted is in nom. or acc.*
thank, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *with dat.*
that (*demonstrative*), ille, -a, -ud; is, ea, id; (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*conj.*), quod, *with indic., introducing a statement of fact;* (*of purpose or result*), ut, *with subj.;* (*after neg. expressions of doubt*), quīn, *with subj.*; **that . . . not** (*to express purpose*), nē, *with subj.;* (*to express result*), ut . . . nōn, *or, after negs.*, quīn, *with subj.;* (*to express opposition or contempt*), iste, -ā, -ud.
that famous, the famous, ille, -a, -ud, *generally postpos.*
that of yours, iste, -a, -ud.
the absent, eī quī absunt.
the day before, prīdiē.
the great, ille, -a, -ud, *generally postpos.*
the majority, plērīque, -aeque, -aque.
the moment that, simul atque *or* simul ac, *with indic.*
then, tum; deinde; (*introducing an inference*) igitur, *generally postpos. in Cicero.*
thence, inde.
the other (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum; **the one . . . the other**, alter . . . alter; **the others**, cēterī, -ae, -a; reliquī, -ae, -a.
the other side (*in debate*), istī.
the outcome was, ēvēnit ut, *with subj.*
there, ibī; **(thither)**, eō; **(of the route)**, eā.
thereafter, posteā.
therefore, quā rē; igitur, *generally postpos. in Cicero.*
there is no doubt that, nōn est dubium quīn, *with subj.*
there is no reason why, nihil est quod, *with subj.*
there is the additional circumstance that, accēdit quod, *with indic.*
thereupon, inde.
the . . . the (*with comparatives*),

quō . . . eō; **the more . . . the less,** quō magis . . . eō minus.

thing, rēs, reī, *f.* Rēs *generally means some particular thing, as fact, circumstance, power, etc.; the English word "thing" may generally be best expressed by a neuter adjective or pronoun, unless the case form does not indicate the gender, where* rēs *may be used.*

think (*suppose, believe*), arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum; crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum; exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*ponder*), cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

third, tertius, -a, -um.

thirst, sitis, -is, *f.*

thirty, trīgintā, *indecl.*

this, hīc, haec, hoc; (*espec. when qualified by rel.*), is, ea, id.

thither, eō.

though, *see* **although.**

thousand, mīlle, *indecl. in singular; in pl.* mīlia, -ium.

thousandth, mīllesimus, -a, -um.

threaten, immineō, -ēre, *with dat.;* impendeō, -ēre, *with dat;* (**threaten with**), vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* ad *and acc.*

three, trēs, tria.

three days, trīduum, -ī, *n.*

three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.

thrill, permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.

through, per, *with acc.*

throw into disorder, perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

thus, ita; sic.

Tiber, Tiberis, -is, *m.*

Tiberine, of the Tiber, Tiberīnus, -a, -um.

tidings, nūntius, -ī, *m.*

till, *see* **until.**

time, tempus, -oris, *n.*; (*age*), aetās, -ātis, *f.*

Titus Herminius, Titus Herminius, -ī, *m.*

to (*of the terminus*), in *or* ad *with acc., or with names of towns, etc., acc. alone;* (*of the indir. obj.*), *use the dat.*

to a different place from, aliō atque.

to a man, cūnctus, -a, -um.

toil (*verb*), labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*noun*), labor, -ōris, *m.*

too (*also*), quoque, *postpos.;* etiam; (*excessively*), nimis, *or express by the comparative.*

too little, parum, *indecl., with gen.*

too much, nimis, *indecl., with gen.,* or nimius, -a, -um.

top of, summus, -a, -um, *in agreement with the word modified.*

torch, fax, facis, *f.*

torture, cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*

to *or* **for the same place,** eōdem.

touch, tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum; (*with emotion*), moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.

towards, ad, *with acc.*

town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*

training, disciplīna, -ae, *f.*

tranquil, aequus, -a, -um.

treachery, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

treat of, attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum.

treated with great respect, summō honōre adfectus, -a, -um.

tree, arbor, -ōris, *f.*

trial, iūdicium, -ī, *n.*

tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*

tributary, vectīgālis, -e.

trinket, ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.*

triumph, triumphus, -ī, *m.*

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

troubled, commōtus, -a, -um.

true, vērus, -a, -um.

truly, vērē; vērō.

truthfully, vērē.

trust, cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum, *with dat. of persons or abl. of things.*

try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; temptō and tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

try to avoid, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

twentieth, vīcēsimus, -a, -um.

twenty, vīgintī, *indecl.*

two, duo, -ae, -o.

two days, bīduum, -ī, *n.*

two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

under (*of place*), sub, *with abl. with verbs of rest, and acc. with verbs of motion;* (*of circumstance*), *abl. of accordance;* **under these circum-**

stances, quae cum ita sint; hīs in rēbus.
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
undertake, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
unexpected, repentīnus, -a, -um.
unfriendly, īnfēstus, -a, -um.
unharmed, incolumis, -e.
unique, singulāris, -e.
unjustly, iniūriā.
unknown (*of facts*), obscūrus, -a, -um; (*of persons*), īgnōtus, -a, -um.
unless, nisi.
unperturbed, aequō animō.
unpopularity, invidia, -ae, *f.*
unscathed, incolumis, -e.
until (*conj.*), dum; quoad; (*prep.*), ad, *with acc.*
unwillingly, *say* "*unwilling*," invītus, -a, -um.
unwisely, nōn sapienter.
upon (*of place*), in *with abl.*
upright, innocēns, -entis.
urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *with* ut *or* nē *and subj.*
use (*verb*), ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *with abl.*
use (*noun*), ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
usher in, intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
utmost, summus, -a, -um.

valiently, fortiter.
very, *express by sup.*; **the very,** ipse, -a, -um.
very little, minimē.
veteran (*adj.*), vetus, -eris.
victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
view (*opinion*), sententia, -ae, *f.*; (*proposal*), ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
vigorously, vehementer.
villain, nefārius homō, nefāriī hominis, *m.*
villainy, facinus, -oris, *n.*
violently, vehementer.
virtue (*quality*), virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
virtuously, honestē.
visit with punishment, suppliciō adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
voluntarily, ultrō.
vote (*particularly of a senator*), sententia, -ae, *f.*
voyage, cursus, -ūs, *m.*

wage war, bellum gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, *with* cum *and abl.*
wait to see if *or* **whether,** exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* sī *and subj.*
wall (*of a city*), mūrus, -ī, *m.*; (*house wall*), pariēs, -etis, *m.*
want (*desire*), cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; volō, velle, voluī; expetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; (*lack*), careō, -ere, -uī, *with abl.*; **want a change of government,** novīs rēbus studeō, -ēre, -uī.
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warfare, rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, *f.*; bellum, -ī, *n.*
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with* ut *or* nē *and subj.*; *in the sense of* "*give warning of a fact*," *it may also take indirect discourse.*
Washington, Vasingtō, -ōnis, *m.*
watch (*verb*), vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*noun*), vigilia, -ae, *f.*
way (*route*), via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*; (*manner, method*), modus, -ī, *m.*; ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
weapon (*offensive*), tēlum, -ī, *n.*; (*defensive weapons*), arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
wear, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
well, bene; **be well,** valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
well-qualified, idōneus, -a, -um, *with* quī *and subj.*
well-trained, ērudītus, -a, -um.
what (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interr.*), quis, quid, *and adj.* quī, quae, quod.
whatever, *see* **whoever.**
what reason is there why, quid est quod, *with subj.*
what sort of, of what sort, quālis, -e; cuius modī.
when, cum, *with indic. or subj.*; ubi, *with indic.*; (*interr.*), quandō, *with indic.*
whence, unde.
whenever, cum, *with perf. or plup. ind.*

where, ubi; (*whither*), quō; (*by what route*), quā.
whereby, *say* "*by which.*"
wherefore, quā rē.
wherever, ubi, ubicumque.
whether (*interr.*), num; -ne, *enclit.*; **whether . . . or** (*in alternative questions*), utrum . . . an, -ne . . . an; **whether . . . or not**, utrum . . . annōn (*direct*), *or* necne (*indirect*); **whether . . . or** (*in alternative conditions*), sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu).
which (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interr.*), quis, quid, *and adj.* quī, quae, quod; **which of two**, uter, -tra, -trum.
while, dum, *with indic.*; cum.
whither, quō.
who (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interr.*), quis, quid, *and adj.* quī, quae, quod.
whoever, whatever, quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque; sī quis, sī quid, *and adj.* sī quī, sī qua, sī quod; quisquis, quicquid *or* quidquid.
whole, tōtus, -a, -um; ūniversus, -a, -um.
wholly, omnīnō.
why, cūr; quā rē; quam ob rem; quā dē causā; (*with subst. force*), quid.
wicked, improbus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*; coniunx, -iugis (*lit.* "*spouse,*" *meaning either wife or husband, and therefore m. or f. according to its meaning*).
will, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*
win (*conquer*), vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum; superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*succeed*), cōnsequor *and* adsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum; adipīscor, -ī, -eptus sum.
winter, hiems, -is, *f.*
wise, sapiēns, -entis.
wisely, sapienter.
wish, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; volō, velle, voluī; **not wish**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
wish for, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
with (*to denote manner or accompaniment*), cum *with abl.*
with all one's might, maximē; summīs vīribus.
with calmness, aequo animō.
withdraw (*trans.*), dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum; (*intrans.*), discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
with each other, inter sē.
with equanimity, aequō animō.
with good intentions, bonō animō.
within, in, *with abl.*; intrā, *with acc.*
within human recollection, post hominum memoriam.
withhold, detrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum (*lit.* "*withdraw*").
without, sine, *with abl.*
without a share in, expers, -pertis, *with gen.*
without the order, iniussū, *abl.*, *m.*
withstand, resistō, -ere, -stitī, *with dat.*; sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
with the consent of the senators, auctōritāte patrum.
with the intention that, eō consiliō ut, *with subj.*
woe, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*; fēmina, -ae, *f.*
wonder, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
wonderful, mīrus, -a, -um.
word, vōx, vōcis, *f.*; verbum, -ī, *n.*
work, opus, -eris, *n.*
work hard, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, ātum.
world (the whole), orbis (-is, *m.*) terrārum *or* terrae.
worry (*verb*), commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum; (*noun*), cūra, -ae, *f.*
worship, veneror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
worth, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
worthy, dignus, -a, -um, *with abl. or* quī *and subj.*
would rather, mālō, mālle, māluī, *with inf.*
would that, utinam, *with subj.*; *neg.* nē *or* utinam nē.
wound (*verb*), vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*noun*), vulnus, -eris, *n.*
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.
writer, scrīptor, -ōris, *m.*
writing, scrīptum, -ī, *n.*
wrong (*verb*), violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*noun*), iniūria, -ae, *f.*; scelus, -eris, *n.*

yesterday, herī; hesternō diē.
yet (*nevertheless*), tamen; (*still*), adhūc; etiamnum.
year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yield, concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
you, tū, tuī; vōs, vestrum *and* vestrī.
your, yours, tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.
youth (*young person*), adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*; (*time of youth*), adulēscentia, -ae, *f.*

zeal, studium, -ī, *n.*

SEP 15 1913

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 037 315 7